

# **XDS Family of Products**

## **XDS-C** **for Microsoft Windows** **Version 2.6**

### **User's Guide**



<http://www.excelsior-usa.com>

Copyright © 1999-2011 Excelsior LLC. All rights reserved.

Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Excelsior, LLC.

Excelsior's software and documentation have been tested and reviewed. Nevertheless, Excelsior makes no warranty or representation, either express or implied, with respect to the software and documentation included with Excelsior product. In no event will Excelsior be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental or consequential damages resulting from any defect in the software or documentation included with this product. In particular, Excelsior shall have no liability for any programs or data used with this product, including the cost of recovering programs or data.

XDS is a trademark of Excelsior LLC.

Microsoft, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

All trademarks and copyrights mentioned in this documentation are the property of their respective holders.

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>About XDS</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Welcome to XDS . . . . .	1
1.2	Conventions used in this manual . . . . .	2
1.2.1	Language descriptions . . . . .	2
1.2.2	Source code fragments . . . . .	2
<b>2</b>	<b>Getting started</b>	<b>5</b>
2.1	Using the Modula-2 compiler . . . . .	5
2.2	Using the Oberon-2 compiler . . . . .	6
2.3	Error reporting . . . . .	7
2.4	Building a program . . . . .	7
2.5	Debugging a program . . . . .	8
<b>3</b>	<b>Configuring the compiler</b>	<b>11</b>
3.1	System search paths . . . . .	11
3.2	Working configuration . . . . .	11
3.3	XDS memory usage . . . . .	12
3.4	Directory hierarchies . . . . .	13
3.5	XDS search paths . . . . .	14
3.5.1	Redirection file . . . . .	14
3.5.2	Regular expression . . . . .	15
3.6	Options . . . . .	16
3.7	Configuration file . . . . .	17
3.8	Filename extensions . . . . .	18
3.9	Customizing compiler messages . . . . .	19
3.10	XDS and your C compiler . . . . .	20
3.10.1	Building the run-time library . . . . .	20
3.10.2	Configuring XDS for seamless compilation . . . . .	20
<b>4</b>	<b>Using the compiler</b>	<b>23</b>
4.1	Invoking the compiler . . . . .	23

4.1.1	Precedence of compiler options . . . . .	23
4.2	XDS compilers operation modes . . . . .	24
4.2.1	COMPILE mode . . . . .	24
4.2.2	MAKE mode . . . . .	25
4.2.3	PROJECT mode . . . . .	26
4.2.4	GEN mode . . . . .	26
4.2.5	BROWSE mode . . . . .	27
4.2.6	ALL submode . . . . .	27
4.2.7	BATCH submode . . . . .	28
4.2.8	OPTIONS submode . . . . .	28
4.2.9	EQUATIONS submode . . . . .	29
4.3	Files generated during compilation . . . . .	29
4.3.1	Modula-2 compiler . . . . .	29
4.3.2	Oberon-2 compiler . . . . .	29
4.4	Control file preprocessing . . . . .	30
4.5	Project files . . . . .	31
4.6	Make strategy . . . . .	33
4.7	Smart recompilation . . . . .	34
4.8	Template files . . . . .	35
4.8.1	Using equation values . . . . .	36
4.8.2	File name construction . . . . .	37
4.8.3	Iterators . . . . .	37
4.8.4	Examples . . . . .	38
<b>5</b>	<b>Compiler options and equations</b>	<b>41</b>
5.1	Options . . . . .	41
5.2	Options reference . . . . .	44
5.3	Equations . . . . .	55
5.4	Equations reference . . . . .	58
5.5	Error message format specification . . . . .	63
5.6	The system module COMPILER . . . . .	63
<b>6</b>	<b>Compiler messages</b>	<b>65</b>
6.1	Lexical errors . . . . .	65
6.2	Syntax errors . . . . .	67
6.3	Semantic errors . . . . .	68
6.4	Symbol files read/write errors . . . . .	86
6.5	Internal errors . . . . .	88
6.6	Warnings . . . . .	89
6.7	Pragma warnings . . . . .	92
6.8	Native XDS warnings . . . . .	92

6.9	XDS-C errors . . . . .	94
<b>7</b>	<b>XDS Modula-2</b>	<b>97</b>
7.1	ISO Standard compliance . . . . .	97
7.1.1	Ordering of declarations . . . . .	97
7.2	New language's features . . . . .	98
7.2.1	Lexis . . . . .	99
7.2.2	Complex types . . . . .	101
7.2.3	Sets and packedsets . . . . .	102
7.2.4	Strings . . . . .	103
7.2.5	Value constructors . . . . .	103
7.2.6	Multi-dimensional open arrays . . . . .	105
7.2.7	Procedure type declarations . . . . .	105
7.2.8	Procedure constants . . . . .	106
7.2.9	Whole number division . . . . .	106
7.2.10	Type conversions . . . . .	107
7.2.11	NEW and DISPOSE . . . . .	108
7.2.12	Finalization . . . . .	109
7.2.13	Exceptions . . . . .	110
7.2.14	The system module EXCEPTIONS . . . . .	112
7.2.15	The system module M2EXCEPTION . . . . .	115
7.2.16	Termination . . . . .	119
7.2.17	Coroutines . . . . .	119
7.2.18	Protection . . . . .	122
7.3	Standard procedures . . . . .	122
7.4	Compatibility . . . . .	123
7.4.1	Expression compatibility . . . . .	123
7.4.2	Assignment compatibility . . . . .	125
7.4.3	Value parameter compatibility . . . . .	126
7.4.4	Variable parameter compatibility . . . . .	126
7.4.5	System parameter compatibility . . . . .	126
7.5	The Modula-2 module SYSTEM . . . . .	127
7.5.1	System types . . . . .	129
7.5.2	System functions . . . . .	131
7.5.3	System procedures . . . . .	134
7.6	Language extensions . . . . .	135
7.6.1	Lexical extensions . . . . .	135
7.6.2	Additional numeric types . . . . .	136
7.6.3	Type casting . . . . .	138
7.6.4	Assignment compatibility with BYTE . . . . .	138
7.6.5	Dynamic arrays . . . . .	138

7.6.6	Constant array constructors . . . . .	140
7.6.7	Set complement . . . . .	140
7.6.8	Read-only parameters . . . . .	141
7.6.9	Variable number of parameters . . . . .	142
7.6.10	Read-only export . . . . .	143
7.6.11	Renaming of imported modules . . . . .	143
7.6.12	NEW and DISPOSE for dynamic arrays . . . . .	144
7.6.13	HALT . . . . .	145
7.6.14	ASSERT . . . . .	145
7.7	Source code directives . . . . .	145
7.7.1	Inline options and equations . . . . .	145
7.7.2	Conditional compilation . . . . .	147
<b>8</b>	<b>XDS Oberon-2</b>	<b>149</b>
8.1	The Oberon environment . . . . .	149
8.1.1	Program structure . . . . .	150
8.1.2	Creating a definition . . . . .	150
8.2	Last changes to the language . . . . .	151
8.2.1	ASSERT . . . . .	151
8.2.2	Underscores in identifiers . . . . .	151
8.2.3	Source code directives . . . . .	152
8.3	Oakwood numeric extensions . . . . .	152
8.3.1	Complex numbers . . . . .	152
8.3.2	In-line exponentiation . . . . .	154
8.4	Using Modula-2 features . . . . .	154
8.5	Language extensions . . . . .	155
8.5.1	Comments . . . . .	156
8.5.2	String concatenation . . . . .	156
8.5.3	VAL function . . . . .	156
8.5.4	Read-only parameters . . . . .	156
8.5.5	Variable number of parameters . . . . .	157
8.5.6	Value constructors . . . . .	157
8.6	The Oberon-2 module SYSTEM . . . . .	157
8.6.1	Compatibility with BYTE . . . . .	158
8.6.2	Whole system types . . . . .	158
8.6.3	NEW and DISPOSE . . . . .	158
8.6.4	M2ADR . . . . .	159
<b>9</b>	<b>Run-time support</b>	<b>161</b>
9.1	Memory management . . . . .	161
9.2	Postmortem history . . . . .	163

9.3	The oberonRTS module . . . . .	164
9.3.1	Types and variables . . . . .	164
9.3.2	Garbage collection . . . . .	164
9.3.3	Object finalization . . . . .	165
9.3.4	Meta-language facilities . . . . .	166
9.3.5	Module iterators . . . . .	168
<b>10</b>	<b>Multilanguage programming</b>	<b>171</b>
10.1	Modula-2 and Oberon-2 . . . . .	171
10.1.1	Basic types . . . . .	171
10.1.2	Data structures . . . . .	172
10.1.3	Garbage collection . . . . .	174
10.2	Direct language specification . . . . .	174
10.3	Interfacing to C . . . . .	176
10.3.1	Foreign definition module . . . . .	176
10.3.2	External procedures specification . . . . .	177
10.4	Relaxation of compatibility rules . . . . .	177
10.4.1	Assignment compatibility . . . . .	178
10.4.2	Parameter compatibility . . . . .	178
10.4.3	Ignoring function result . . . . .	179
<b>11</b>	<b>Mapping to C</b>	<b>181</b>
11.1	Layout of a generated code . . . . .	181
11.2	Identifiers . . . . .	184
11.3	Data types . . . . .	187
11.3.1	Basic types . . . . .	187
11.3.2	Special system types . . . . .	188
11.3.3	Modula-2 enumeration types . . . . .	190
11.3.4	Modula-2 set types . . . . .	190
11.3.5	Record types . . . . .	191
11.3.6	Pointer types . . . . .	192
11.3.7	Dynamic arrays . . . . .	193
11.4	Procedure declarations . . . . .	194
11.4.1	Parameters . . . . .	195
11.4.2	Open arrays . . . . .	197
11.4.3	Oberon-2 variable record parameters . . . . .	198
11.4.4	Sequence parameters . . . . .	198
11.4.5	Function results . . . . .	199
11.4.6	Procedure body . . . . .	200
11.4.7	Nested procedures . . . . .	203
11.5	Module initialization and finalization . . . . .	204

11.6	Oberon-2 object-oriented features . . . . .	205
11.7	Oberon-2 run-time data structures . . . . .	207
11.8	Options . . . . .	209
11.8.1	Describing platform . . . . .	209
11.8.2	Code generation . . . . .	210
11.8.3	Evaluating size of types . . . . .	216
11.8.4	Foreign language interface . . . . .	217
11.8.5	Code presentation . . . . .	219
<b>12</b>	<b>Possible Problems</b>	<b>221</b>
12.1	Warnings from C compiler . . . . .	221
12.2	Ordering of record fields . . . . .	221
12.3	Name collisions in C text . . . . .	221
<b>13</b>	<b>Using the Win32 API</b>	<b>223</b>
13.1	Obtaining API documentation . . . . .	223
13.2	Using the Win32 API in your programs . . . . .	223
13.2.1	Windows.def: merged versus reexporting . . . . .	224
13.2.2	Reducing the size of Windows.def . . . . .	224
13.2.3	Building GUI applications . . . . .	225
13.2.4	Declaring callbacks . . . . .	225
13.3	Using resources . . . . .	225
13.3.1	Automatic resource binding . . . . .	225
13.3.2	Header files . . . . .	225
13.4	Generic GUI application . . . . .	226
<b>A</b>	<b>Limitations and restrictions</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>TopSpeed Compatibility Pack</b>	<b>229</b>
B.1	Conditional compilation . . . . .	229
B.2	Declarations and visibility . . . . .	230
B.2.1	Alias declaration . . . . .	230
B.3	Types . . . . .	230
B.3.1	Numeric types . . . . .	230
B.3.2	Sizes of base types . . . . .	230
B.3.3	Based and virtual pointers . . . . .	231
B.3.4	Compatibility with system types . . . . .	231
B.4	Objects and values . . . . .	232
B.4.1	Fixed variable placement . . . . .	232
B.4.2	Value constructors . . . . .	232
B.5	Expressions . . . . .	232



B.5.1	Function calls in designators . . . . .	232
B.5.2	Logical shift operators . . . . .	233
B.5.3	Comparison of structured values . . . . .	233
B.6	Statements . . . . .	233
B.6.1	CASE without ELSE . . . . .	233
B.6.2	FOR loop control variable . . . . .	234
B.6.3	GOTO statement . . . . .	234
B.7	Procedures . . . . .	234
B.7.1	External procedures . . . . .	234
B.7.2	Open array parameter compatibility . . . . .	235
B.7.3	Procedure types . . . . .	235
B.7.4	Predefined procedures . . . . .	236
B.7.5	Type conversion vs type cast . . . . .	236
B.7.6	Inline and code procedures . . . . .	237
B.8	Modules . . . . .	237
B.8.1	Import . . . . .	237
B.8.2	Hidden pointer base types . . . . .	237
B.8.3	Export from local module . . . . .	238
B.8.4	The module SYSTEM . . . . .	238
B.9	Intel x86 16-bit mode specifics . . . . .	239
B.10	Object oriented extensions . . . . .	239
B.11	Pragmae . . . . .	239
B.11.1	Pragma syntax . . . . .	239
B.11.2	Open array parameters passing . . . . .	240
B.11.3	Bitwise operations on cardinals . . . . .	240
B.11.4	Other pragmae . . . . .	240
B.12	XDS TS-like library . . . . .	241
B.12.1	Module FIO . . . . .	241
B.12.2	Module Graph . . . . .	244
B.12.3	Module IO . . . . .	248
B.12.4	Module Lib . . . . .	248
B.12.5	Module MATHLIB . . . . .	249
B.12.6	Module ShtHeap . . . . .	250
B.12.7	Module Str . . . . .	250
B.12.8	Module Window . . . . .	251
B.12.9	Multithreading . . . . .	252



# Chapter 1

## About XDS

### 1.1 Welcome to XDS

XDS™ is a family name for professional Modula-2/Oberon-2 programming systems for Intel x86-based PCs (Windows and Linux editions are available). XDS-C is a "via C" cross-compiler that allows you to target virtually any system, from embedded to Unix servers. XDS provides an uniform programming environment for the mentioned platforms and allows design and implementation of portable software.

The system contains both Modula-2 and Oberon-2 compilers. These languages are often called “**safe**” and “**modular**”. The principle innovation of the language Modula-2 was the module concept, information hiding and separate compilation.

Oberon-2 is an object-oriented programming (OOP) language based on Modula-2. With the introduction of object-oriented facilities, extensible project design became much easier. At the same time, Oberon-2 is quite simple and easy to learn and use, unlike other OOP languages, such as C++ or Smalltalk.

The XDS Modula-2 compiler implements ISO 10514 standard of Modula-2. The ISO standard library set is accessible from both Modula-2 and Oberon-2.

XDS is based on a platform-independent front-end for both source languages which performs all syntactic and semantic checks on the source program. The compiler builds an internal representation of the compilation unit in memory and performs platform-independent analysis and optimizations. After that the compiler emits output code. It can be either native code for the target platform or text in the ANSI C language. ANSI C code generation allows you to cross compile Modula-2/Oberon-2 for almost any platform.

Moving to a new language usually means throwing away or rewriting your existing library set which could have been the work of many years. XDS allows the programmer to mix Modula-2, Oberon-2, C and Assembler modules and libraries in a single project.

XDS includes standard ISO and PIM libraries along with a set of utility libraries and an interface to the ANSI C library set.

XDS compilers produce optimized ANSI C code which is further compiled by a C compiler. The call of a C compiler can be done transparent for the user. However, XDS can be used as Modula-2/Oberon-2 to C translator, as it produces easy readable and understandable text. It is also possible to preserve your source code comments in their original context.

## 1.2 Conventions used in this manual

### 1.2.1 Language descriptions

Where formal descriptions for language syntax constructions appear, an extended Backus-Naur Formalism (EBNF) is used.

These descriptions are set in the *Courier* font.

```
Text = Text [ { Text } ] | Text .
```

In EBNF, brackets "[" and "]" denote optionality of the enclosed expression, braces "{" and "}" denote repetition (possibly 0 times), and the vertical line "|" separates mutually exclusive variants.

Non-terminal symbols start with an upper case letter (*Statement*). Terminal symbols either start with a lower case letter (*ident*), or are written in all upper case letters (*BEGIN*), or are enclosed within quotation marks (e.g. " := ").

### 1.2.2 Source code fragments

When fragments of a source code are used for examples or appear within a text they are set in the *Courier* font.

```
MODULE Example;
```

```
IMPORT InOut;
```

```
BEGIN
  InOut.WriteString("This is an example");
  InOut.WriteLine;
END Example.
```



# Chapter 2

## Getting started

In this and following chapters we assume that XDS is properly installed and configured (See Chapter 3); the default file extensions are used.

Your XDS package contains a script file, `xmwork`, which may be used to prepare a working directory. For more information, consult your `readme.lst` file from the XDS on-line documentation.

### 2.1 Using the Modula-2 compiler

In the working directory, use a text editor to create a file called **hello.mod**, containing the following text:

```
MODULE hello;

IMPORT InOut;

BEGIN
  InOut.WriteString("Hello World");
  InOut.WriteLine;
END hello.
```

Type

```
xm hello.mod
```

at the command prompt. `xm` will know that the Modula-2 compiler should be invoked for the source file with the extension **.mod**. The compiler heading line

will appear:

```
XDS Modula-2 version [code generator] "hello.mod"
```

showing which compiler has been invoked (including its version number), which code generator is being used (in square brackets) and what is its version, and finally the name of the source file `xm` has been asked to compile.

Assuming that you have correctly typed the source file, the compiler will then display something like

```
no errors, no warnings, lines    15, time    1.09
```

showing the number of errors, the number of source lines and the compilation time.

**Note:** The XDS compiler reports are user configurable. If the lines similar to the above do not appear, check that the **DECOR** equation value contains letters ‘C’ (compiler heading) and ‘R’ (report).

## 2.2 Using the Oberon-2 compiler

In our bilingual system the Modula-2 source code just shown is also perfectly valid as the Oberon-2 code. XDS allows you to use Modula-2 libraries when programming in Oberon-2 (in our case the `InOut` module).

As in Modula-2, this source code in Oberon-2 constitutes a *top-level module* or *program module*, but in Oberon-2, there is no syntactic distinction between a top-level module and any other module. The Oberon-2 compiler must be specifically told that this is a top-level module by using the option **MAIN**.

Copy the source file to the file **hello.ob2** and type:

```
xm hello.ob2 +MAIN
```

The same sequence of reports will occur as that of the Modula-2 compiler, but the Oberon-2 compiler will also report whether a new symbol file was generated or not. It is also possible to override the default source file extension using **M2** and **O2** options:

```
xm hello.mod +O2 +MAIN
```

In this case, the Oberon-2 compiler will be invoked regardless of the file extension.



## 2.3 Error reporting

If either compiler detects an error in your code, an error description will be displayed. In most cases a copy of the source line will also be shown with a dollar sign "\$" placed directly before the point at which the error occurred. The format in which XDS reports errors is user configurable (See 5.5), by default it includes a file name, a position (line and column numbers) at which the error occurred, an error type indicator, which can be [E]rror, [W]arning or [F]ault, an error number, and an error message.

### Example

```
* [bf.mod 26.03 W310]  
* infinite loop  
$LOOP
```

## 2.4 Building a program

After compilation of `hello` program you can invoke your C compiler. It is necessary to specify the paths to header files and library (use the name of appropriate library from you package). Consult your C compiler manual for syntax of the compiler command line.

```
cc hello.c -Ic:\xds\include c:\xds\lib\libxds.lib
```

Type

```
hello
```

to run your program.

The `xdsuser` script creates the `xcc` script that can be used to compile and link a simple program. Type

```
xcc hello.c
```

If your project contains more than one module, we recommend to write a project file (See 4.5) and use appropriate template file (See 4.8). The following project file contains all necessary settings:

```
% debug ON
-gendebug+
-lineno+
% specify template file
-template = xds.tem
% specify a name of a makefile
-mkfname = tmp
-mkfext  = mkf
% force generation of the makefile
-makefile+
% call the make
-link = "make -f %s",mkfname#mkfext;
% main module of the program
!module hello.mod
```

It specifies the template file to use (`xds.tem`), the name of the makefile (`tmp.mkf`) and the make command line.

After successful compilation of the whole project the compiler creates the makefile and then executes the command line, specified by the **LINK** equation. The `xds.tem` template file defines a template for a makefile. The following invocation

```
xm hello.prj =p
```

will compile modules constituting the project (if required) and then execute the make. See 4.8 for the full description of template files. See also the project files, generated by the `xdsuser` script.

## 2.5 Debugging a program

XDS allows one to use any standard debugger. However, the *postmortem history* feature of XDS run-time support may be used in many cases instead of debugger. To enable this feature the option **GENDEBUB** should be set for all modules in the program; the debug mode should also be set for a C compiler and linker.

If your program is compiled in this mode, the run-time system will print a stack of procedure calls (a file name and a line number) on abnormal termination of your

program.

### Example

```
MODULE test;  
  
PROCEDURE Div(a,b: INTEGER): INTEGER;  
BEGIN  
    RETURN a DIV b  
END Div;  
  
PROCEDURE Try;  
    VAR res: INTEGER;  
BEGIN  
    res:=Div(1,0);  
END Try;  
  
BEGIN  
    Try;  
END test.
```

When this program is running, an exception is raised and the run-time system prints the exception location and a stack of procedure calls. If the option **LINENO** is ON, all information will be reported in terms of original (Oberon-2/Modula-2) source files:

```
#RTS: No exception handler #6: zero or negative divisor.  
test.mod          5  
test.mod          11  
test.mod          15
```

The exception was raised in line 6 of `test.mod`, the `Div` procedure was called from line 12, while the `Try` procedure was called from line 16 (module body). If the option **LINENO** is OFF, all information will be reported in terms of generated C files:

```
#RTS: No exception handler #6: zero or negative divisor.  
test.c            17  
test.c            27  
test.c            36
```

See [11.8.2](#) for additional details.



# Chapter 3

## Configuring the compiler

### 3.1 System search paths

In order for your operating system to know where to find the executable binary files which constitute the XDS package, you must set your operating system search paths appropriately. See the Read Me First file from your on-line documentation.

### 3.2 Working configuration

The core part of XDS is the `xm` utility, which combines the project subsystem with Modula-2 and Oberon-2 compilers, accompanied with a set of system files<sup>1</sup>:

- xm.red** Search path redirection file (see [3.5.1](#))
- xm.cfg** Configuration file (see [3.7](#))
- xm.msg** Texts of error messages (see [3.9](#))
- xm.kwd** List of C/C++ keywords and reserved identifiers

Being invoked, `xm` tries to locate the `xm.red` file, first in the current directory and then in the directory where `xm` is placed (so called *master redirection file*).

Other system files are sought by paths defined in `xm.red`. If `xm.red` is not found, or it does not contain paths for a particular system file, that file is sought in the current directory and then in the directory where the `xm` utility resides.

---

<sup>1</sup>A name of a system file is constructed from the name of the compiler utility and the correspondent filename extension. If you rename the `xm` utility, you should also rename all system files.

A configuration file contains settings that are relevant for all projects. Project specific settings are defined in project files (See 4.5). A so-called template file is used to automate the program build process (See 4.8).

A redirection file, a configuration file, and, optionally, a project file and a template file constitute a working environment for a single execution of the `xm` utility. The compiler preprocesses files of all these types as described in 4.4.

Portable software development is one of the main goals of XDS. To achieve that goal, not only the source texts should be portable between various platforms, but the environment also. XDS introduces a portable notation for file names that may be used in all system files and on the command line. The portable notation combines DOS-like and Unix-like notations (file names are case sensitive):

```
[ drive_letter ":" ] unix_file_name
```

### Examples

```
c:/xds/bin
/mnt/users/alex/cur_pro
cur_pro/sources
```

Along with the *base directory* macro (See 4.4) this portable notation allows to write all environment files in a platform independent and location independent manner.

## 3.3 XDS memory usage

XDS compilers are written in Oberon-2<sup>2</sup>. As any other Oberon-2 program, a compiler uses garbage collector to deallocate memory. These days, most operating systems, including Windows and Linux, provide virtual memory. If an Oberon-2 program exceeds the amount of available physical memory, the garbage collector becomes inefficient. Thus, it is important to restrict the amount of memory that can be used by an Oberon-2 program. As a rule, such restriction is set in the configuration or project file (See the **HEAPLIMIT** equation). You may also let the run-time system determine the proper heap size at run time by setting **HEAPLIMIT** to zero.

Similarly, the equation **COMPILERHEAP** should be used to control the amount of memory used by a compiler itself. That equation is set in the configuration file

---

<sup>2</sup>We use XDS in most of our developments.

(`xm.cfg`). We recommend to set it according to the amount of physical memory in your computer:

RAM in megabytes	COMPILERHEAP
32-64	16000000
64-128	48000000
more than 128	96000000

It may be necessary to increase **COMPILERHEAP** if you get the "out of memory" message (F950). It is very unlikely, if **COMPILERHEAP** is set to 16 megabytes or more. Your compilation unit should be very large to exceed this memory limit. **Note:** if you are using Win32 or X Window API definition modules, set **COMPILERHEAP** to at least 16 megabytes.

Vice versa, if you notice unusually intensive disk activity when compiling your program, it may indicate that the value of the **COMPILERHEAP** equation is too large for your system configuration.

Set **COMPILERHEAP** to zero if you would prefer the compiler to dynamically adjust heap size in accordance with system load.

See [9.1](#) for more information on XDS memory management.

## 3.4 Directory hierarchies

XDS compilers give you complete freedom over where you store both your source code files and any files which compilers create for you. It is advisable to work in a project oriented fashion — i.e. to have a separate directory hierarchy for each independent project.

Due to the re-usable nature of modules written in Modula-2 or Oberon-2, it is wise to keep a separate directory for those files which are to be made available to several projects. We will call such files the *library* files.

We recommend you to have a separate working directory for each project. You can also create subdirectories to store symbol files and generated code files. We recommend to use the supplied script or its customized version to create all subdirectories and, optionally, a local redirection file or a project file. Refer to the "Read Me First" file for more information about that script.

## 3.5 XDS search paths

Upon activation, `xm` looks for a file called `xm.red` — a *redirection file*. That file defines paths by which all other files are sought. If a redirection file was not found in the current directory, the master redirection file is loaded from the directory where `xm` executable is placed.

### 3.5.1 Redirection file

A redirection file consists of several lines of the form<sup>3</sup>:

```
pattern = directory {";" directory}
```

`pattern` is a regular expression with which names of files `xm` has to open or create are compared. A pattern usually contains wildcard symbols `'*'` and `'?'`, where

Symbol	Matches
*	any (possibly empty) string
?	any single character.

For a full description of regular expressions see [3.5.2](#).

It is also possible to have comment lines in a redirection file. A comment line should start with the `"%"` symbol.

A portable notation (see [3.2](#)) is used for directory names or paths. A path may be absolute or relative, i.e. may consist of full names such as

```
/usr/myproj/def
```

or of names relative to the current directory, such as

```
src/common
```

denoting the directory `src/common` which is a subdirectory of the current directory. A single dot as a pathname represents the current directory, a double dot represents the parent, i.e. the directory which has the current directory as a subdirectory.

The base directory macro `$!` can be used in a directory name. It denotes the path to the redirection file. If the redirection file is placed in the `/usr/alex` directory then `$!/sym` denotes the `/usr/alex/sym` directory, whereas `$!/..` denotes the `/usr` directory.

---

<sup>3</sup>See also [4.4](#)



For any file, its name is sequentially matched with a pattern of each line. If a match was found, the file is sought in the first of the directories listed on that line, then in the second directory, and so on until either the file is found, or there are no more directories to search or there are no more patterns to match.

If `xm` could not locate a file which is needed for correct operation, e.g. a necessary symbol file, it terminates with an appropriate error message.

When creating a file, `xm` also uses redirection, and its behavior is determined by the **OVERWRITE** option. If the option was set ON, `xm` first searches for the file it is about to create using redirection. Then, if the file was found, `xm` overwrites it. If no file of the same name as the one which `xm` needs to create was found or the **OVERWRITE** option was set OFF, then the file is be created in the directory which appears first in the search path list which pattern matched the filename.

If no pattern matching a given filename can be found in the `xm.red` file, then the file will be read from (or written to) the current working directory.

**Note:** If a pattern matching a given filename is found then `xm` will *not* look into the current directory, unless it is explicitly specified in the search path.

The following entry in `xm.red` would be appropriate for searching for the symbol files (provided that symbol files have the extension **.sym**).

```
*.sym=sym;c:/xds/sym;.
```

Given the above redirection, the compiler will first search for symbol files in the directory `sym` which is a subdirectory of the current working directory; then in the directory storing the XDS library symbol files and then in the current directory.

#### Example of a redirection file:

```
xm.msg = /xds/bin
*.mod = mod
*.def = def
*.ob2 = oberon
*.c    = c
*.h    = include;/xds/include
*.sym  = sym; /xds/sym/C
```

### 3.5.2 Regular expression

A regular expression is a string containing certain special symbols:

Sequence	Denotes
<code>*</code>	an arbitrary sequence of any characters, possibly empty (equivalent to <code>{\000-\377}</code> expression)
<code>?</code>	any single character (equivalent to <code>[\000-\377]</code> expression)
<code>[ . . . ]</code>	one of the listed characters
<code>{ . . . }</code>	an arbitrary sequence of the listed characters, possibly empty
<code>\nnn</code>	the ASCII character with octal code <code>nnn</code> , where <code>n</code> is <code>[ 0-7 ]</code>
<code>&amp;</code>	the logical operation AND
<code> </code>	the logical operation OR
<code>^</code>	the logical operation NOT
<code>( . . . )</code>	the priority of operations

A sequence of the form `a-b` used within either `[ ]` or `{ }` brackets denotes all characters from `a` to `b`.

### Examples

```
*.def
    all files which extension is .def

project.*
    files which name is project with an arbitrary extension

*.def|*.mod
    files which extension is either .def or .mod

{a-z}*X.def
    files starting with any sequence of letters, ending in one final "X" and having
    the extension .def.
```

## 3.6 Options

A rich set of `xm` options allows one to control the source language, code generation and internal limits and settings. We distinguish between boolean options (or just options) and equations. An *option* can be set ON (TRUE) or OFF (FALSE), while an *equation* value is a string. In this chapter we describe only the syntax of setup directive. The full list of `xm` options and equations is provided in the Chapter 5.

Options and equations may be set in a configuration file (see 3.7), on the command line (see 4.2), in a project file (see 4.5)), and in the source text (see 7.7).

The same syntax of a setup directive is used in configuration and project files and on the command line. The only difference is that arbitrary spaces are permitted in files, but not on the command line. Option and equation names are case independent.

```

SetupDirective    = SetOption
                  | SetEquation
                  | DeclareOption
                  | DeclareEquation
                  | DeclareSynonym
SetOption         = '-' name ('+' | '-')
SetEquation       = '-' name '=' [ value ]
DeclareOption     = '-' name ':' [ '+' | '-' ]
DeclareEquation   = '-' name ':=' [ value ]
DeclareSynonym    = '-' name '::' name

```

All options and equations used by `xm` are predeclared.

The `DeclareSynonym` directive allows one to use a different name (e.g. shorter name) for an option or equation.

The old version of `SetOption` is also supported for convenience:

```

OldSetOption      = '+' name | '-' name

```

### Examples

Directive	Meaning
<code>-M2Extensions+</code>	<b>M2EXTENSION</b> is set ON
<code>-Oberon=o2</code>	<b>OBERON</b> is set to "o2"
<code>-debug:</code>	<b>DEBUG</b> is declared and set OFF
<code>-Demo:+</code>	<b>DEMO</b> is declared and set ON
<code>-Vers:=1.0</code>	<b>VERS</b> is declared and set to "1.0"
<code>-A::genasm</code>	<b>A</b> is declared as a synonym for <b>GENASM</b>
<code>+m2extensions</code>	<b>M2EXTENSIONS</b> is set OFF

## 3.7 Configuration file

A configuration file can be used to set the default values of options and equations (see Chapter 5) for all projects (or a set of projects). A non-empty line of a configuration file may contain a single compiler option or equation setup directive (see

3.6) or a comment. Arbitrary spaces are permitted. The "%" character indicates a comment; it causes the rest of a line to be discarded. **Note:** the comment character can not be used when setting an equation.

The *master configuration file*, placed along with the `xm` utility, usually contains default settings for the target platform and declarations of platform-specific options and equations, which may be used in project and template files.

```
% this is a comment line
% Set equation:
- BSDef = df
% Set predeclared options:
- RangeCheck -    % turn range checks off
- M2EXTENSIONS + % allow Modula-2 extensions
% Declare new options:
-iPentium:+
-i80486:-
-i80386:          % is equal to -i80386:-
% Declare synonym:
-N :: checknil
-N              % disallow NIL checks
% end of configuration file
```

Figure 3.1: A sample configuration file

### 3.8 Filename extensions

`xm` allows you to define what you want to be the standard extensions for each particular type of file. For instance, you may prefer your Oberon-2 source code texts to end in **.ob2** instead of **.ob**.

We recommend to either use the traditional extensions or at least the extensions which describe the kind of file they refer to, and keep same extensions across all your projects. For example, use **.def** and **.mod** for Modula-2 modules, **.ob2** for Oberon-2 modules, etc.

Certain other factors must also influence your decisions. Traditionally, Oberon-2 pseudo-definition modules (as created by a browser) are extended with a **.def**. With XDS, this may conflict with the extension used for Modula-2 definition modules. Therefore, the XDS browser (see 4.2.5) uses the extension **.odf** by default.

The following filename extensions are usually defined in the configuration file:

<b>DEF</b>	extension for Modula-2 definition modules
<b>MOD</b>	extension for Modula-2 implementation modules
<b>OBERON</b>	extension for Oberon-2 modules
<b>BSDEF</b>	extension for Oberon-2 pseudo definition modules
<b>HEADER</b>	extension for C header files
<b>CODE</b>	extension for generated code files
<b>SYM</b>	extension for symbol files

See Table 5.5 for the full list of file extensions.

**Example (file extension entries in xm.cfg):**

```
-def      = def
-mod      = mod
-oberon   = ob2
-sym      = sym
```

## 3.9 Customizing compiler messages

The file `xm.msg` contains texts of error messages in the form

```
number text
```

The following is an extract from `xm.msg`:

```
001 illegal character
002 comment not closed; started at line %d
...
042 incompatible assignment
...
```

Some messages contain format specifiers for additional arguments. In the above example, the message 002 contains a `%d` specifier used to print a line number.

To use a language other than English for compiler messages it is sufficient to translate `xm.msg`, preserving error numbers and the order of format specifiers.

## 3.10 XDS and your C compiler

XDS-C can be used as a translator or compiler. In the first case, the C code generated by `xm` will be used for further development or will be ported to another platform. In the second case, `xm` is used as first pass of compilation process; to get an executable program a C compiler must be used. A C compiler, linker, or make utility may be invoked seamlessly (see 3.10.2)

Usually, you have to configure `xm` for your C compiler only once and then `xm` will do everything to get your program ready for execution.

### 3.10.1 Building the run-time library

The XDS run-time library is included in an XDS package in C source form, i.e. for each library module its header file and C source file are provided. For Unix platforms, a pre-built library file containing object files may be included. This is not the case for the Windows platform, because different C compilers support different calling and naming conventions. We recommend to build the library file for your C compiler or several library files for various C compilers or memory models. The `LIB/C` subdirectory of your XDS installation contains makefiles which can be used for that purpose. It may be necessary to change a C compiler name or compiler options in this file.

### 3.10.2 Configuring XDS for seamless compilation

We will use the term *seamless compilation* if `xm` is configured to call a C compiler, linker or make implicitly to prepare an executable for your program. A makefile can be produced after successful completion of a project and a make utility can be implicitly called then to compile and link your program.

The compiler uses a template file (See 4.8) to generate a makefile. The XDS distribution contains the `xds.tem` template file, which can be used for various C compilers. The equation **ENV\_TARGET** determines a target platform, i.e. a file system, including a representation of a file name, C compiler to use, its options, etc. By default, the value of this equation is equal to the value of the **ENV\_HOST** equation. The configuration file `xm.cfg` contains a list of supported platform, i.e. list of names, that can be used as a value of **ENV\_TARGET** equation. We recommend to set the value of the equation in the beginning of the configuration file. It may be necessary to change some settings for your platform or append a new platform. All changes should be done in `xm.cfg` and `xds.tem` files.

Note, in the current version it is not possible to append a new platform with DOS-like file system. We recommend to change settings for platform "MSDOS", "OS2" and "WinNT" if necessary.

See [2.4](#) for more information.





# Chapter 4

## Using the compiler

### 4.1 Invoking the compiler

The XDS Modula-2 and Oberon-2 compilers are combined together with the make subsystem and an Oberon-2 browser into a single utility, `xm`. When invoked without parameters, the utility outputs a brief help information.

`xm` is invoked from the command line of the following form

```
xm { mode | option | name }
```

where `name`, depending on the operation mode can be a module name, a source file name, or a project file name. See 4.2 for a full description of operation modes.

`option` is a compiler setup directive (See 3.6). All options are applied to all operands, notwithstanding their relative order on the command line. On some platforms, it may be necessary to enclose setup directives in quotation marks:

```
xm hello.mod '-checkindex+'
```

See Chapter 5 for the list of all compiler options and equations.

#### 4.1.1 Precedence of compiler options

The `xm` utility receives its options in the following order:

1. from a configuration file **`xm.cfg`** (See 3.7)
2. from the command line (See 4.2)
3. from a project file (if present) (See 4.5)

4. from a source text (not all options can be used there) (See [7.7](#))

At any point during operation, the last value of an option is in effect. Thus, if the equation **OBERON** was set to **.ob2** in a configuration file, but then set to **.o2** on the command line, the compiler will use **.o2** as the default Oberon-2 extension.

## 4.2 XDS compilers operation modes

XDS Modula-2/Oberon-2 compilers have the following operation modes:

Mode	Meaning
COMPILE	Compile all modules given on the command line
PROJECT	Make all projects given on the command line
MAKE	Check dependencies and recompile
GEN	Generate makefile for all projects
BROWSE	Extract definitions from symbol files
HELP	Print help and terminate

Both the PROJECT and MAKE modes have two optional operation submodes: BATCH (see [4.2.7](#)) and ALL (see [4.2.6](#)). Two auxiliary operation submodes — options (see [4.2.8](#)) and EQUATIONS (see [4.2.9](#)) can be used to inspect the set of compiler options and equations and their values.

On the command line, the compiler mode is specified with the "=" symbol followed by a mode name. Mode names are not case sensitive, and specifying an unique portion of a mode name is sufficient, thus

```
=PROJECT is equivalent to =p
=BROWSE is equivalent to =Bro
```

Operation modes and options can be placed on the command line in arbitrary order, so the following two command lines are equivalent:

```
xm =make hello.mod =all -checknil+
xm -checknil+ =a =make hello.mod
```

### 4.2.1 COMPILE mode

```
xm [=compile] { FILENAME | OPTION }
```

COMPILE is the default mode, and can be invoked simply by supplying xm with a source module(s) to compile. If xm is invoked without a given mode, COMPILE mode is assumed. In order to determine which compiler should be used, xm looks

at the extensions of the given source files. The default mapping of extensions is given below :

```
.mod  -  Modula-2 implementation module
.def  -  Modula-2 definition module
.ob2  -  Oberon-2 module
```

For example:

```
xm hello.mod
```

will invoke the Modula-2 compiler, whereas:

```
xm hello.ob2
```

will invoke the Oberon-2 compiler.

The user is able to reconfigure the extension mapping (See 3.8). It is also possible to override it from the command line using the options **M2** and **O2**:

```
xm hello.mod +o2  (* invokes O2 compiler *)
xm hello.ob2 +m2  (* invokes M2 compiler *)
```

**Note:** In the rest of this manual, the COMPILE mode also refers to any case in which the compiler *compiles* a source file, regardless of the actually specified mode (which can be COMPILE, MAKE, or PROJECT). For instance, an option or equation, which is stated to affect the compiler behaviour in the COMPILE mode, is relevant to MAKE and PROJECT modes as well.

### 4.2.2 MAKE mode

```
xm =make [=batch] [=all] { FILENAME | OPTION }
```

In the MAKE mode the compiler determines module dependencies using IMPORT clauses and then recompiles all necessary modules. Starting from the files on the command line, it tries to find an Oberon-2 module or a definition and implementation module for each imported module. It then does the same for each of the imported modules until all modules are located. Note that a search is made for source files only. If a source file is not found, the imported modules will not be appended to the recompile list. See section 4.6 for more details.

When all modules are gathered, the compiler performs an action according to the operation submodule. If the BATCH submodule (see 4.2.7) was specified, it creates a batch file of all necessary compilations, rather than actually compiling the source code.

If the ALL submode (see 4.2.6) was specified, all gathered files are recompiled, otherwise XDS recompiles only the necessary files. The *smart recompilation* algorithm is described in 4.7.

Usually, a Modula-2 program module or an Oberon-2 top-level module is specified on the command line. In this case, if the **LINK** equation is set in either configuration file or xm command line, the linker will be invoked automatically in case of successful compilation. This feature allows you to build simple programs without creating project files.

### 4.2.3 PROJECT mode

```
xm =project [=batch] [=all] { PROJECTFILE | OPTION }
```

The PROJECT mode is essentially the same as the MAKE mode except that the modules to be ‘made’ are provided in a project file. A project file specifies a set of options and a list of modules. See 4.5 for further details. As in the MAKE mode, ALL (see 4.2.6) and BATCH (see 4.2.7) submodes can be used.

If a file extension of a project file is omitted, XDS will use an extension given by the equation **PRJEXT** (.prj by default).

It may be necessary to compile a single module in the environment specified in a project file. It can be accomplished in the COMPILE operation mode using with the **PRJ** equation:

```
xm -prj=myproject MyModule.mod
```

#### See also

- MAKE operation mode: 4.2.2
- Make strategy: 4.6
- Smart recompilation: 4.7

### 4.2.4 GEN mode

```
xm =gen { PROJECTFILE | OPTION }
```

The GEN operation mode allows one to generate a file containing information about your project. The most important usage is to generate a makefile, which can

then be passed to the make utility accompanying the "underlying" C compiler, so that all generated C files can be compiled and linked into an executable program.

This operation mode can also be used to obtain additional information about your project, e.g. a list of all modules, import lists, etc.

A so-called template file, specified by the **TEMPLATE** equation, is used in this mode. A template file is a text file, some lines of which are marked with a certain symbol. All the lines which are not marked are copied to the output file verbatim. The marked lines are processed in a special way. See 4.8 for more information.

The compiler creates a file with a name specified by the equation **MKFNAME**. If the equation is empty, the project file name is used. A file name is then concatenated with the extension specified by the equation **MKFEXT**.

#### 4.2.5 BROWSE mode

```
xm =browse { MODULENAME | OPTION }
```

The BROWSE operation mode allows one to generate a pseudo definition module for an Oberon-2 module. In this mode, the compiler reads a symbol file and produces a file which contains declarations of all objects exported from the Oberon-2 module, in a format resembling Modula-2 definition modules.

The configuration option **BSDEF** specifies the extension of a generated file. If this option is not set, then the default extension (**.odf**) will be used.

Options **BSCLOSURE** and **BSREDEFINE** can be used to control the form of a generated file. **Note:** the **BSTYLE** equation (described in 8.1.2) is ignored in this operation mode, and the browse style is always set to DEF.

The **MAKEDEF** option (See 8.1.2) provides an alternative method of producing pseudo definition modules, preserving so-called *exported* comments if necessary.

#### 4.2.6 ALL submode

In both PROJECT and MAKE modes, the compiler checks the time stamps of the files concerned and recompiles only those files that are necessary (See 4.7). If the ALL submode was specified, the time stamps are ignored, and all files are compiled.

### 4.2.7 BATCH submode

In the BATCH submode, the compiler creates a batch file of all necessary compilations, rather than actually calling the compilers and compiling the source code.

A batch file is a sequence of lines beginning with the compiler name, followed by module names to recompile.

The compiler creates a batch file with a name determined by either:

1. The compiler option **BATNAME**
2. The project file name (if given)
3. The name **out** (if the name could not be determined by the above).

The name is then concatenated with the batch file extension specified by the equation **BATEXT** (**.bat** by default).

#### See also

- option **LONGNAME** (5.1)
- equation **BATWIDTH** (5.3)

### 4.2.8 OPTIONS submode

The OPTIONS submode allows you to inspect the values of options which are set in the configuration file, project file and on the command line. It can be used together with COMPILE (see 4.2.1), MAKE (see 4.2.2), and PROJECT (see 4.2.3) modes.

The following command line prints (to the standard output) the list of all defined options, including all pre-declared options, all options declared in the configuration file, in the project file `my.prj` and on the command line (`xyz option`):

```
xm =options -prj=my.prj -xyz:+
```

In the PROJECT mode options are listed for each project file given on the command line.

See also the EQUATIONS submode.

## 4.2.9 EQUATIONS submode

The EQUATIONS submode allows you to inspect the values of equations which are set in the configuration file, project file and on the command line. It can be used together with COMPILE (see 4.2.1), MAKE (see 4.2.2), and PROJECT (see 4.2.3) modes.

See also the OPTIONS submode.

## 4.3 Files generated during compilation

When applied to a file which contains a module **name**, the compilers produce the following files.

### 4.3.1 Modula-2 compiler

When applied to a definition module, the Modula-2 compiler produces a *symbol file* (**name.sym**) and a C header file (**name.h**). Generation of a header file can be prevented by use of the **NOHEADER** option. The symbol file contains information required during compilation of a module which imports the module **name**.

When applied to an implementation module or a top level module, the Modula-2 compiler produces a C code file (**name.c**).

### 4.3.2 Oberon-2 compiler

For all compiled modules, the Oberon-2 compiler produces a *symbol file* (**name.sym**), a C header file (**name.h**) and a code file (**name.c**). The symbol file (**name.sym**) contains information required during compilation of a module which imports the module **name**. If the compiler needs to overwrite an existing symbol file, it will only do so if the **CHANGESYM** option is set ON.

	Command line	Generated files
	xm Example.def	Example.sym Example.h
<b>Examples</b>	xm Example.mod	Example.c
	xm Win.ob2 +CHANGESYM	Win.sym Win.h Win.c

## 4.4 Control file preprocessing

An XDS compiler may read the following control files during execution:

- a redirection file (see [3.5.1](#))
- a configuration file (see [3.7](#))
- a project file (see [4.5](#))
- a template file (see [4.8](#))

All these files are preprocessed during read according to the following rules:

A control file is a plain text file containing a sequence of lines. The backslash character ( "\ " ) at the end of a line denotes its continuation.

The following constructs are handled during control file preprocessing:

- macros of the kind  $\$(name)$ . A macro expands to the value of the equation *name* or, if it does not exist, to the value of the environment variable *name*.
- the *base directory* macro ( $\$!$ ) This macro expands to the directory in which the file containing it resides.
- a set of directives, denoted by the exclamation mark (" ! ") as a first non-whitespace character on a line.

A directive has the following syntax (all keywords are case independent):

```
Directive = "!" "NEW" SetOption | SetEquation
           | "!" "SET" SetOption | SetEquation
           | "!" "MESSAGE" Expression
           | "!" "IF" Expression "THEN"
```



```

        | "!" "ELSIF" Expression "THEN"
        | "!" "ELSE"
        | "!" "END".
SetOption   = name ( "+" | "-" ).
SetEquation = name "=" string.

```

The NEW directive declares a new option or equation. The SET directive changes the value of an existent option or equation. The MESSAGE directive prints Expression value to the standard output. The IF directive allows to process or skip portions of files according to the value of Expression. IF directives may be nested.

```

Expression = Simple [ Relation Simple ].
Simple     = Term { "+" | OR Term }.
Relation   = "=" | "#" | "<" | ">".
Term       = Factor { AND Factor }.
Factor     = "(" Expression ")".
           | String
           | NOT Factor
           | DEFINED name
           | name.
String     = "'" { character } "'"
           | '"' { character } '".

```

An operand in an expression is either string, equation name, or option name. In the case of equation, the value of equation is used. In the case of option, a string "TRUE" or "FALSE" is used. The "+" operator denotes string concatenation. Relation operators perform case insensitive string comparison. The NOT operator may be applied to a string with value "TRUE" or "FALSE". The DEFINED operator yields "TRUE" if an option or equation name is declared and "FALSE" otherwise.

See also section [5.6](#).

## 4.5 Project files

A project file has the following structure:

```

{SetupDirective}
{!module {FileName}}

```

Setup directives define options and equations that all modules which constitute the project should be compiled with. See also 3.6 and 4.4.

Every line in a project file can contain only one setup directive. The character "%" indicated a comment; it causes the rest of a line to be discarded. **Note:** the comment character can not be used in a string containing equation setting.

Each `FileName` is a name of a file which should be compiled, linked, or otherwise processed when a project is being built, e.g. a source file, an additional library, a resource file (on Windows), etc. The compiler processes only Modula-2 and Oberon-2 source files. The type of a file is determined by its extension (by default Modula-2/Oberon-2 source files extension is assumed). Files of other types are taken into account only when a template file is processed (see 4.8).

The compiler recursively scans import lists of all specified Modula-2/Oberon-2 source modules and builds the full list of modules used in the project. Thus, usually, a project file for an executable program would contain a single `!module` directive for the file which contains the main program module and, optionally, several `!module` directives for non-source files.

At least one `!module` directive should be specified in a project file.

A project file can contain several **LOOKUP** equations, which allow you to define additional search paths.

XDS compilers give you complete freedom over where to set options, equations and redirection directives. However, it is recommended to specify only those settings in the configuration and redirection files which are applied to all your projects, and use project files for all project-specific options and redirection directives.

Given the sample project file shown on Figure 4.1, the compiler will search for files with `.mod` and `.sym` extensions using search paths specified in the project file *before* paths specified in a redirection file.

A project file is specified explicitly in the **PROJECT** (see 4.2.3) and **GEN** (see 4.2.4) operation modes. In these modes, all options and equations are set and then the compiler proceeds through the module list to gather all modules constituting a project (See 4.6).

In the **MAKE** (see 4.2.2) and **COMPILE** (see 4.2.1) operation modes, a project file can be specified using the **PRJ** equation. In this case, the module list is ignored, but all options and equations from the project file are set.

The following command line forces the compiler to compile the module `hello.mod` using options and equations specified in the project file

```

-lookup = *.mod = mod
-lookup = *.sym = sym; $(XDSDIR)/sym/C
% check project mode
!if not defined mode then
    % by default use debug mode
    !new mode = debug
!end
% report the project mode
!message "Making project in the " + mode + " mode"
% set options according to the mode
!if mode = debug then
    - gendebbug+
    - checkrange+
!else
    - gendebbug-
!fi
% specify template file
- template = $!/templates/watcom.tem
!module hello
!module hello.res

```

Figure 4.1: A Sample Project File

```

hello.prj:
    xm hello.mod -prj=hello.prj

```

## 4.6 Make strategy

This section concerns MAKE (see [4.2.2](#)), PROJECT (see [4.2.3](#)), and GEN (see [4.2.4](#)), operation modes. In these modes, an XDS compiler builds a set of all modules that constitute the project, starting from the modules specified in a project file (PROJECT and GEN) or on the command line (MAKE).

The MAKE mode is used in the following examples, but the comments also apply to the PROJECT and GEN modes.

First, the compiler tries to find all given modules according to the following strategy:

- If both filename extension and path are present, the compiler checks if the given file exists.

```
xm =make mod\hello.mod
```

- If only an extension is specified, the compiler seeks the given file using search paths.

```
xm =make hello.mod
```

- If no extension is specified, the compiler searches for files with the given name and the Oberon-2 module extension, Modula-2 implementation module extension, and Modula-2 definition module extension.

```
xm =make hello
```

An error is raised if more than one file was found, e.g. if both `hello.ob2` and `hello.mod` files exist.

Starting from the given files, the compiler tries to find an Oberon-2 source module or Modula-2 definition and implementation modules for each imported module. It then tries to do the same for each of the imported modules until all the possible modules are located. For each module, the compiler checks correspondence between the file name extension and the kind of the module.

## 4.7 Smart recompilation

In the MAKE (see 4.2.2) and PROJECT (see 4.2.3) modes, if the ALL (see 4.2.6) submode was not specified, an XDS compiler performs *smart recompilation* of modules which are inconsistent with the available source code files. The compiler uses file modification time to determine which file has been changed. For each module the decision (to recompile or not) is made only after the decision is made for all modules on which it depends. A source file is (re)compiled if one or more of the following conditions is true:

### Modula-2 definition module

- the symbol file is missing
- the symbol file is present but its modification date is earlier than that of the source file or one of the imported symbol files
- the header file is missing (**NOHEADER** option is OFF) or its modification date is earlier than that of the source file

**Modula-2 implementation module**

- the code file is missing
- the code file is present but the file modification date is earlier than that of the source file or one of the imported symbol files (including its own symbol file)

**Modula-2 program module**

- the code file is missing
- the code file is present but the file modification date is earlier than that of the source file or one of the imported symbol files

**Oberon-2 module**

- the symbol file is missing
- the symbol file is present but the modification date is earlier than that of one of the imported symbol files
- the header file is missing (**NOHEADER** option is OFF)
- the code file is missing
- the code file is present but the file modification date is earlier than that of the source file or one of the imported symbol files

When the **VERBOSE** option is set ON, the compiler reports a reason for recompilation of each module. **Note:** if an error occurred during compilation of a Modula-2 definition module or an Oberon-2 module, all its client modules are not compiled at all.

## 4.8 Template files

A *template file* is used to build a "makefile" in the PROJECT (see 4.2.3) and GEN (see 4.2.4) operation modes, if the option **MAKEFILE** is ON<sup>1</sup>.

The compiler copies lines from a template file into the output file verbatim, except lines marked as requiring further attention. A single character (attention mark) is specified by the equation **ATTENTION** (default is '!')

---

<sup>1</sup> "MAKEFILE" is a historical name; a linker or library manager response file may be built as well.

A template file is also subject to preprocessing (see 4.4).

A marked line (or template) has the following format<sup>2</sup>:

```

Template  = { Sentence }.
Sentence  = Item { "," Item } ";" | Iterator.
Item      = Atom | [ Atom | "^" ] "#" [ Extension ].
Atom      = String | name.
String    = '"' { character } '"'
          | "'" { character } "'".
Extension = [ ">" ] Atom.
Iterator  = "{" Set ":" { Sentence } "}".
Set       = { Keyword | String }
Keyword   = DEF | IMP | OBERON | MAIN
          | C | HEADER | ASM | OBJ.

```

name should be a name of an equation. Not more than three items may be used in a sentence. A first item in a sentence is a format string, while others are arguments.

The XDS distribution contains a template file `xm.tem` which can be used to produce a makefile for one of the supported C compilers.

### 4.8.1 Using equation values

In the simplest form, a template line may be used to output a value of an equation. For example, if the template file contains the line

```
! "The current project is %s.\n",prj;
```

and the project `prj\test.prj` is processed, the output will contain the line

```
The current project is prj\test.prj.
```

**Note:** the line

```
! prj;
```

is valid, but may produce unexpected results under systems in which the backslash character ("`\`") is used as a directory names separator (e.g. OS/2 or Windows):

```
prj      est.prj
```

because "`\t`" in a format string is replaced with the tab character. Use the following form instead:

---

<sup>2</sup>The same syntax is used in the **LINK** equation.

```
! "%s",prj;
```

### 4.8.2 File name construction

The "#" operator constructs a file name from a name and an extension, each specified as an equation name or literal string. A file is then searched for according to XDS search paths and the resulting name is substituted. For example, if the file `useful.lib` resides in the directory `'../mylibs'` and the redirection file contains the following line:

```
*.lib = /xds/lib;../mylibs
```

the line

```
! "useful"#"lib"
```

will produce

```
../mylibs/useful.lib
```

If the modifier ">" is specified, the compiler assumes that the file being constructed is an output file and creates its name according to the strategy for output files (See [3.5.1](#) and the **OVERWRITE** option).

The "#" operator is also used to represent the current value of an iterator (see [4.8.3](#)). The form in which a name or extension is omitted can be used in an iterator only.

The form "^#" may be used in a second level iterator to represent the current value of the first level iterator.

### 4.8.3 Iterators

*Iterators* are used to generate some text for all modules from a given set. Sentences inside the first level of braces are repeated for all modules of the project, while sentences inside the second level are repeated for all modules imported into the module currently iterated at the first level. A set is a sequence of keywords and strings. Each string denotes a specific module, while a keyword denotes all modules of specific kind.

The meaning of keywords is as follows:

<b>Keyword</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
DEF	Modula-2 definition module
IMP	Modula-2 implementation module
MAIN	Modula-2 program module or Oberon-2 module marked as <b>MAIN</b>
OBERON	Oberon module
C	C source text
HEADER	C header file
ASM	assembler source text
OBJ	object file

A keyword not listed above is treated as filename extension. Sentences are repeated for all files with that extension which are explicitly specified in the project file using `!module` directives (see 4.5). This allows, for instance, additional libraries to be specified in a project file:

```
sample.prj:
```

```

    -template = mytem.tem
    !module Sample.mod
    !module mylib.lib

```

```
mytem.tem:
```

```

    . . .
    ! "%s", "libxds"#"lib"
    ! { lib: "+%s",#; }
    ! "\n"
    . . .

```

```
generated file:
```

```

    . . .
    d:\xds\lib\x86\libxds.lib+mylib.lib
    . . .

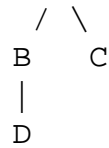
```

#### 4.8.4 Examples

Consider a sample project which consists of a program module A, which imports modules B and C, and B, in turn, imports D (all modules are written in Modula-2):

A





The following examples illustrate template files usage:

This template line lists all project modules for which source files are available:

```
! { imp oberon main: "%s ",#; }
```

For the sample project, it would generate the following line:

```
A.mod B.mod C.mod D.mod
```

To output both definition and implementation modules, the following lines may be used:

```
! { def : "%s ",#; }
! { imp oberon main: "%s ",#; }
```

The output would be:

```
B.def C.def D.def A.mod B.mod C.mod D.mod
```

The last template line may be used to list all modules along with their import:

```
! { imp main: "%s\n",#; { def: "  %s\n",#; } }
```

The output:

```
A.mod
  B.def
  C.def
B.mod
  D.def
C.mod
D.mod
```



# Chapter 5

## Compiler options and equations

A rich set of XDS compiler options allows you to control the source language, the generated code, and the internal limits and settings. We distinguish between boolean options (or just options) and equations. An option can be set ON (TRUE) or OFF (FALSE), while an equation value is a string.

### 5.1 Options

Options control the process of compilation, including language extensions, run-time checks and code generation. An option can be set ON (TRUE) or OFF (FALSE).

A compiler setup directive (See [3.6](#)) is used to set the option value or to declare a new option.

Options may be set in a configuration file (see [3.7](#)), on the command line (see [4.2](#)), in a project file (see [4.5](#)), or in the source text (See [7.7](#)). At any point of operation, the last value of an option is in effect.

Alphabetical list of all options along with their descriptions may be found in the section [5.2](#). See also tables [5.1](#) (page [42](#)), [5.2](#) (page [42](#)), [5.3](#) (page [43](#)) and [5.4](#) (page [44](#)).

Option	Meaning
<b>ASSERT</b>	enable ASSERT generation
<b>CHECKDINDEX</b>	check of dynamic array bounds
<b>CHECKDIV</b>	check for a positive divisor (DIV and MOD)
<b>CHECKINDEX</b>	check of static array bounds
<b>CHECKNIL</b>	NIL pointer dereference check
<b>CHECKPROC</b>	check of a formal procedure call
<b>CHECKRANGE</b>	range checks (range types and enumerations)
<b>CHECKSET</b>	range check of set operations
<b>CHECKTYPE</b>	dynamic type guards (Oberon-2 only)

Table 5.1: Run-time checks

Option	Meaning
<b>M2ADDTYPES</b>	add SHORT and LONG types
<b>M2BASE16</b>	use 16-bits basic types in Modula-2
<b>M2CMPSYM</b>	compare symbol files in Modula-2
<b>M2EXTENSIONS</b>	enable Modula-2 extensions
<b>O2ADDKWD</b>	enable additonal keywords in Oberon-2
<b>O2EXTENSIONS</b>	enable Oberon-2 extensions
<b>O2ISOPRAGMA</b>	enable ISO Modula-2 pragmas in Oberon
<b>O2NUMEXT</b>	enable Oberon-2 scientific extensions
<b>STORAGE</b>	enable default memory management in Modula-2
<b>TOPSPEED</b>	enable Topspeed Modula-2-compatible extensions

Table 5.2: Source language control options

Option	Meaning
<b>__GEN_C__</b>	ANSI C code generation
<b>__GEN_X86__</b>	code generation for 386/486/Pentium/PentiumPro
<b>COMMENT</b>	copy comments into a generated C code
<b>CONVHDRNAME</b>	use file name in the <code>#include</code> directive
<b>CSTDLIB</b>	definition of the C standard library
<b>DIFADR16</b>	SYSTEM.DIFADR returns 16-bits value
<b>GENCDIV</b>	generate C division operators
<b>GENC++</b>	generate C++
<b>GENCONSTENUM</b>	generate enumeration as constants
<b>GENCTYPES</b>	generate C types
<b>GENDATE</b>	insert a date in a C file
<b>GENDEBUG</b>	generate code in the debug mode
<b>GENFULLNAME</b>	generate full name in <code>#lineno</code> directive
<b>GENHISTORY</b>	enable postmortem history
<b>GENKRC</b>	generate K&R C
<b>GENPROCLASS</b>	generate a specification of a procedure class
<b>GENPROFILE</b>	generate additional code for profiling
<b>GENSIZE</b>	evaluate sizes of types
<b>GENTYPEDEF</b>	generate typedef's for types
<b>INDEX16</b>	index is of 16-bits
<b>LINENO</b>	generate line numbers in C code files
<b>NOEXTERN</b>	do not generate prototypes for external C functions
<b>NOHEADER</b>	disable generation of a header file
<b>NOOPTIMIZE</b>	disable a set of optimizations
<b>PROCINLINE</b>	enable in-line procedure expansion
<b>TARGET16</b>	C <code>int</code> type is of 16-bits
<b>VERSIONKEY</b>	append version key to the module initialization

Table 5.3: Code generator control options

Option	Meaning
<b>BSCLOSURE</b>	browse control option
<b>BSREDEFINE</b>	browse control option
<b>CHANGESYM</b>	permission to change a symbol file
<b>FATFS</b>	limit file names to 8.3
<b>GCAUTO</b>	enables implicit call of the garbage collector
<b>LONGNAME</b>	use long names in batch files
<b>M2</b>	force the Modula-2 compiler
<b>MAIN</b>	mark an Oberon-2 main module
<b>MAKEDEF</b>	generate definition
<b>MAKEFILE</b>	generate makefile
<b>O2</b>	forces the Oberon-2 compiler
<b>OVERWRITE</b>	create a file, always overwrites the old one
<b>VERBOSE</b>	produce verbose messages
<b>WERR</b>	treat warnings as errors
<b>WOFF</b>	suppress warning messages
<b>XCOMMENTS</b>	preserve exported comments

Table 5.4: Miscellaneous options

## 5.2 Options reference

This section lists all options in alphabetical order. Those options that may be arbitrarily placed in the source code are marked as *inline* options (See also 7.7). There are also options which can be placed in a source file, but only in a module header (i.e. before any of the keywords "DEFINITION", "IMPLEMENTATION", and "MODULE") These options are marked as *header*. If an option is not marked either as header or inline, then the result of setting it in the source text is undefined.

Operation modes in which an option has effect are listed in square brackets ([]) after the option name; the character '\*' stands for all operation modes. For example, [browse] means that the option is used by the compiler in the BROWSE operation mode only.

**Note:** in the MAKE (see 4.2.2) and PROJECT (see 4.2.3) modes the compiler switches to the COMPILE (see 4.2.1) mode to compile each module.

Run-time check options are ON by default. If not explicitly specified, other options are OFF (FALSE) by default.

**\_\_GEN\_X86\_\_** [compile]

The compiler sets this option ON, if the code generation for 386/486/Pentium/PentiumPro is in operation.

The option can be used for compiling different text fragments for different targets. See also [7.7.2](#).

**\_\_GEN\_C\_\_** [compile]

The compiler sets this option ON, if the C code generation is in operation.

The option can be used for compiling different text fragments for different targets. See also [7.7.2](#).

**ASSERT** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is OFF, the compiler ignores all calls of the standard procedure ASSERT.

**Warning:** Ensure that all ASSERT calls in your program do not have side effects (i.e. do not contain calls of other function procedures) before setting this option OFF.

The option is ON by default.

**BSCLOSURE** [browse]

Include all visible methods.

If the option is set ON, the browser includes all defined and inherited type-bound procedure declarations with all record declarations when creating a pseudo-definition module. See also [8.1.2](#).

**BSREDEFINE** [browse]

Include all redefined methods.

If the option is set ON, the browser includes original definitions of any overwritten type-bound procedures with record declarations. See also [8.1.2](#).

**CHANGESYM** [compile] (*header*)

Permission to change a module interface (a symbol file).

The Oberon-2 compiler creates a temporary symbol file every time an Oberon-2 module is compiled, compares this symbol file with the existing one and overwrites it with the new one if necessary. When the option is OFF (by default), the compiler reports an error if interface of a module (and, hence, its symbol file) has been changed and does not replace the old symbol file.

**Note:** if the **M2CMPSYM** option is set, the same is valid for compilation of a Modula-2 definition module, i.e., the **CHANGESYM** option should be set ON for the compilation to succeed if a module interface has been changed.

**CHECKINDEX** [compile] (*inline*)

A check of dynamic array bounds.

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates index checks for dynamic arrays (POINTER TO ARRAY OF T).

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKDIV** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates a check if a divisor is positive in DIV and MOD operators.

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKINDEX** [compile] (*inline*)

A check of static array bounds.

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates index checks for all arrays except dynamic (See the **CHECKDINDEX** option).

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKNIL** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates NIL checks on all pointer dereferences.

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKPROC** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates a NIL check when calling a procedure variable.

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKRANGE** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates range checks for range types and enumerations.

The option is ON by default.



**CHECKSET** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates range checks for set operations (INCL, EXCL, set aggregates).

The option is ON by default.

**CHECKTYPE** [compile, Oberon-2 only] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates dynamic type guards.

The option is ON by default.

**COMMENT** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler copies comments to appropriate places in the generated C code. Comments from an Oberon-2 module are only inserted into the C code file and not into the header file.

**CONVHDRNAME** [compile]

If the option is set ON, the compiler uses a file name in the `#include` directive. Otherwise the compiler generates a module name postfixed by the header file extension.

**CSTDLIB** [compile, *foreign definition only*] (*header*)

The option should be set when compiling a foreign definition module, otherwise it will be ignored. If the option is set ON, the compiler uses angle brackets `<>` in the `#include` directive, when importing the foreign definition. Otherwise the compiler uses quotes.

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include "MyLib.h"
```

**DIFADR16** [compile]

If the option is set ON, the compiler assumes that the difference between addresses on the target platform is a 16-bit integer value, otherwise a 32-bit integer value.

The correct setting of the option is required for the ADDADR, SUBADR, and DIFADR system functions to work correctly.

See [11.8.1](#) for further details.

**FATFS** [\*]

Forces the compiler to limit file names to FAT "8.3" convention.

**GCAUTO** [compile,*top-level module only*] (*header*)

Enables implicit calls of the garbage collector in the generated program. The option is ignored for all modules except the top-level module of the program. We recommend to set the option in the project or configuration file.

See also [9.1](#).

**GENCDIV** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler translates DIV and MOD operators to C division operators / and %. By default, XDS generates ???.

**GENCXX** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates C++ code. By default, ANSI C code is generated. (See also **GENKRC**).

**GENCONSTENUM** [compile] (*header*)

If this option is set ON, a Modula-2 enumeration type is translated to a set of integer constants. Otherwise, it is translated to a C enumeration (enum).

**GENCTYPES** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates standard C type names whenever possible, otherwise names defined in run-time support are used.

See [11.8.2](#) for further details.

**GENDATE** [compile]

If the option is set ON (by default), the compiler inserts the current date into a generated C file.

**GENDEBUG** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates code in debug mode. If your program is compiled in this mode, the run-time system prints a stack of procedure calls (a file name and a number of a line) on abnormal termination of your program. If the option **LINENO** is also ON, the stack is printed in terms of original (Oberon-2/Modula-2) source files, otherwise a file name and a number of a line of generated C files is printed.

**Note:** Setting the option ON will significantly enlarge your program and slow it down.

See [11.8.2](#) for further details.

**GENFULLFNAME** [compile]

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates full file names, including file paths from redirection directives, in `#lineno` directive.

**GENHISTORY** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the run-time system prints a stack of procedure calls (a file name and a line number) on abnormal termination of your program. It should be set when compiling a main module of the program. In this case the required part of the run-time system will be added to the program. The option **LINENO** should be set for all modules in the program.

See [2.5](#) for an example.

**GENKRC** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates K&R C (no types in function prototypes, etc). It can be useful when porting software to platforms for which ANSI C compilers are not available. By default, the compiler generates ANSI C code.

See [11.4](#) and [11.8.2](#) for further details.

**Note:** Setting this option ON removes the line length limit in the generated C text (see **GENWIDTH**).

**GENPROCLASS** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler inserts a special macro `X2C_PROCLASS` call in function prototypes for Modula-2 and Oberon-2 procedures. The option is set ON by default.

See [11.4](#) and [11.8.2](#) for further details.

**GENPROFILE** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates additional code to provide a profile of the program. See [11.8.2](#) for further details.

**GENSIZE** [compile] (*header*)

As specified in the language reports the call of standard function `SIZE` can be used in constant expression. Due to the specific of compilation to an intermediate language, the compiler does not know the sizes of most types during compilation.

When the option is OFF, the compiler will report an error if an attempt is made to use `SIZE` of almost all types in a constant expression:

```
CONST size = SIZE(MyRecord);
```

**Note:** sizes of whole types, BOOLEAN, CHAR, and set types are known to the compiler.

See [11.8.3](#) for further details.

### **GENTYPEDEF** [compile] (*inline*)

There are two possible ways to generate a declaration of a record (struct) type in C – by using `typedef` or not. In most cases the way used by the compiler is of no concern. However, when writing a foreign language interface module (See Chapter [10](#)) it is desirable to control type declarations.

When the option is ON, the compiler uses the `typedef` form for all the types declared. The option can be used in the source text, e.g:

```
<* GENTYPEDEF + *>
TYPE FILE = RECORD END;
<* GENTYPEDEF - *>
```

See [11.8.2](#) for further details.

### **INDEX16** [compile]

If the option is set ON, the compiler assumes that an index is of 16 bits on the target platform. By default, an index is of 32 bits.

See [11.8.1](#) for further details.

### **LINENO** [compile] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler inserts a line of the form

```
#line lineno [module]
```

into the generated C code or header file for every generated statement, forcing the C compiler and other tools (such as a debugger) to refer to the original Modula-2 or Oberon-2 source text instead of the generated C code.

**Note:** Setting this option ON removes the line length limit in the generated C text (see **GENWIDTH**).

### **LONGNAME** [make,project]

Use long names.

If the option is set ON, the compiler uses full path as a prefix for all module names in the generated batch files. See also [4.2.7](#).

**M2** [compile]

Force the Modula-2 compiler.

If the option is set ON, the Modula-2 compiler is invoked regardless of file extension. The option is ignored in MAKE and PROJECT modes.

**M2ADDTYPES** [compile,Modula-2 only] (*header*)

Add short and long modifications of whole types.

If the option is set ON, the compiler recognizes the types SHORTINT, LONGINT, SHORTCARD and LONGCARD as pervasive identifiers .

**Warning:** Usage of additional types may cause problems with the software portability to other compilers.

**M2BASE16** [compile,Modula-2 only] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the basic types INTEGER, CARDINAL, and BITSET are 16 bits wide in Modula-2. By default, they are 32 bits wide.

**M2CMPSYM** [compile,Modula-2 only]

If the option is set ON, the Modula-2 compiler compares the symbol file generated for a definition module with the old version exactly as the Oberon-2 compiler does. If the symbol files are equal, the old one is preserved, otherwise the compiler overwrites symbol file, but only if the **CHANGESYM** option is set ON.

**M2EXTENSIONS** [compile,Modula-2 only] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler allows XDS Modula-2 language extensions (see 7.6), such as line comment ("--"), read-only parameters, etc., to be used in the source code.

**Warning:** Extensions usage may cause problems with porting to third-party compilers.

**MAIN** [compile, Oberon-2 only] (*header*)

Mark the Oberon-2 main module.

If the option is set ON, the compiler generates a program entry point ('main' function) for the Oberon-2 module (See 8.1.1). Recommended to be used in a module header.

**MAKEDEF** [compile,Oberon-2 only]

Forces the Oberon-2 compiler to generate a (pseudo-) definition module after successful compilation of an Oberon-2 module. The compiler preserves

the so-called *exported* comments (i.e. comments started with ‘( \*\*’) if the **XCOMMENTS** option is set ON.

See [8.1.2](#).

**MAKEFILE** [project]

Forces the compiler to generate a makefile after successful compilation of a project. See also [4.2.4](#) and [4.8](#).

**NOEXTERN** [compile] (*inline*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler does not generate C declarations for procedures defined as external.

See [10.3.2](#) for further details.

**NOHEADER** [compile,make,project] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler does not create a C header file.

See also [11.8.4](#).

**NOOPTIMIZE** [compile] If the option is set OFF (by default), the compiler performs a set of optimizations, including constant expression evaluation, constant propagation, etc. If the option is ON, the compiler produces less efficient, but more readable text.

We recommend to switch the option ON only if you are using XDS as a translator, i.e. if you will read or maintain the generated code.

**O2** [compile]

Force Oberon-2 compiler.

If the option is set ON, the Oberon-2 compiler is invoked regardless of the file extension. The option is ignored in MAKE and PROJECT modes.

**O2ADDKWD** [compile,Oberon-2 only] (*header*)

Allows Modula-2 exceptions (see [7.2.13](#)) and finalization (see [7.2.12](#)) to be used in Oberon-2 programs, adding keywords EXCEPT, RETRY, and FINALLY.

**Warning:** Usage of this extension will prevent your program from porting to other Oberon-2 compilers.

**O2EXTENSIONS** [compile,Oberon-2 only] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler allows Oberon-2 language extensions to be used (See [8.5](#)).

**Warning:** Extensions usage will affect portability to third-party Oberon-2 compilers.

**O2ISOPRAGMA** [compile,Oberon-2 only]

If the option is set ON, the compiler allows the ISO Modula-2 style pragmas `<* *>` to be used in Oberon-2. See [8.2.3](#) and [7.7](#).

**Warning:** Usage of ISO Modula-2 pragmas may cause problems when porting source code to third-party Oberon-2 compilers.

**O2NUMEXT** [compile,Oberon-2 only] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler allows the Oberon-2 scientific language extensions to be used (See [8.5](#)), including COMPLEX and LONGCOMPLEX types and the in-line exponentiation operator.

**Warning:** Usage of additional types may cause problems with portability to other compilers.

**OVERWRITE** [\*]

The option changes the way the compiler selects a directory for output files. If the option is OFF, the compiler always creates a file in the directory which appears first in the search path list correspondent to a pattern matching the file name. Otherwise, the compiler overwrites the old file, if it does exist in any directory of that list. See also [3.5.1](#).

**PROCINLINE** [compile]

If the option is ON, the compiler tries to expand procedures in-line. In-line expansion of a procedure eliminates the overhead produced by a procedure call, parameter passing, register saving, etc. In addition, more optimizations become possible because the optimizer may process the actual parameters used in a particular call.

A procedure is not expanded in-line under the following circumstances:

- the procedure is deemed too complex or too large by the compiler.
- there are too many calls of the procedure.
- the procedure is recursive.

**STORAGE** [compile, Modula-2 only] (*header*)

If the option is set ON, the compiler uses the default memory allocation and deallocation procedures for the standard procedures NEW and DISPOSE.

**Warning:** Usage of this option may cause problems with software portability to other compilers.

**TARGET16** [compile]

If the option is set ON, the compiler assumes the C `int` type to be 16 bits wide on the target platform.

See [11.8.1](#) for further details.

**TOPSPEED** [compile]

Setting this option ON enables a set of language extensions that makes the compiler more compatible with TopSpeed. The extensions are described in [Appendix B](#).

**VERBOSE** [make,project]

If the option is set ON, the compiler will report a reason for each module (re)compilation (See [4.7](#)).

**VERSIONKEY** [compile]

This option may be used to perform version checks at link time. If the option is set ON, the compiler generates a name of a module body as composition of

- a module name
- a string `"_BEGIN_"`
- a time stamp
- values of options **TARGET16**, **INDEX16** and **DIFADR16** in the packed form

If a Modula-2 definition module or an Oberon-2 module imported by different compilation units has the same version, the same name is generated for each call of the module body. In all other cases unresolved references will be reported at link time.

If the option is OFF, the compiler generates module body names in a form: `<module_name>_BEGIN`.

**Note:** the option should be set when compiling a Modula-2 definition module or an Oberon-2 module.

See [11.2](#) for further details.

**WERR** [\*] (*inline*)

When the option `WERRnnn` (e.g. `WERR301`) is set ON, the compiler treats the warning `nnn` (301 in the above example) as error. See the `xm.msg` file for warning texts and numbers.



-WERR+ forces the compiler to treat all warnings as errors.

**WOFF** [\*] (*inline*)

When the option WOFFnnn (e.g. WOFF301) is set ON, the compiler does not report the warning nnn (301 in the above example). See the xm.msg file for warning texts and numbers.

-WOFF+ disables all warnings.

**XCOMMENTS** [compile,Oberon-2 only]

If the option is set ON, the browser includes so-called *exported* comments (i.e. comments which start with "( \*\*") into a generated pseudo definition module.

See also [8.1.2](#).

## 5.3 Equations

An *equation* is a pair (name,value), where value is in general case an arbitrary string. Some equations have a limited set of valid values, some may not have the empty string as a value.

A compiler setup directive (See [3.6](#)) is used to set an equation value or to declare a new equation.

Equations may be set in a configuration file (see [3.7](#)), on the command line (see [4.2](#)) and in a project file (see [4.5](#)). Some equations may be set in the source text, at an arbitrary position (marked as *inline* in the reference), or only in the module header (marked as *header*). At any point of operation, the most recent value of an equation is in effect.

Alphabetical list of all equations may be found in the section [5.4](#). See also tables [5.5](#) (page [56](#)), [5.6](#) (page [56](#)), [5.7](#) (page [57](#))

Name	Default	File type
<b>BATEXT</b>	.bat	recompilation batch file
<b>BSDEF</b>	.odf	pseudo-definition file created by browser
<b>CODE</b>	.c	generated C code file
<b>DEF</b>	.def	Modula-2 definition module
<b>HEADER</b>	.h	generated C header file
<b>MKFEXT</b>	.mkf	makefile
<b>MOD</b>	.mod	Modula-2 implementation or main module
<b>OBBERON</b>	.ob2	Oberon-2 module
<b>OBJEXT</b>	.obj	object file
<b>PRJEXT</b>	.prj	project file
<b>SYM</b>	.sym	symbol file

Table 5.5: File extensions

Name	Default	Meaning
<b>ALIGNMENT</b>	1	data alignment
<b>COPYRIGHT</b>		copyright note
<b>ENUMSIZE</b>	4	default size of enumeration types
<b>GCTHRESHOLD</b>		garbage collector threshold (obsolete)
<b>GENIDLEN</b>	30	length of an identifier in the generated C text
<b>GENINDENT</b>	3	indentation
<b>GENWIDTH</b>	78	line width in the generated C text
<b>HEAPLIMIT</b>	0	generated program heap limit
<b>SETSIZE</b>	4	default size of small set types
<b>STACKLIMIT</b>	0	generated program stack limit

Table 5.6: Code generator equations

Name	Default	Meaning
<b>ATTENTION</b>	!	attention character in template files
<b>BATNAME</b>	out	batch file name
<b>BATWIDTH</b>	128	maximum line width in a batch file
<b>BSTYLE</b>	DEF	browse style (See <a href="#">8.1.2</a> )
<b>COMPILERHEAP</b>		heap limit of the compiler
<b>COMPILERTHRES</b>		compiler's garbage collector threshold (obsolete)
<b>DECOR</b>	hrtp	control of compiler messages
<b>ENV_HOST</b>		host platform
<b>ENV_TARGET</b>		target platform
<b>ERRFMT</b>	See <a href="#">5.5</a>	error message format
<b>ERRLIM</b>	16	maximum number of errors
<b>FILE</b>		name of the file being compiled
<b>LINK</b>		linker command line
<b>LOOKUP</b>		lookup directive
<b>MKFNAME</b>		makefile name
<b>MODULE</b>		name of the module being compiled
<b>PRJ</b>		project file name
<b>PROJECT</b>		project name
<b>TABSTOP</b>	8	tabulation alignment
<b>TEMPLATE</b>		template name (for makefile)

Table 5.7: Miscellaneous equations

## 5.4 Equations reference

Operation modes in which an equation has effect are enclosed in square brackets ([ ]) after the equation name; the character '\*' stands for all operation modes. For example [browse] means that the equation is used by the compiler in the BROWSE operation mode only. **Note:** the compiler switches from the MAKE and PROJECT mode to the COMPILE mode to compile a module.

**ALIGNMENT** [compile] (*inline*)

This equation sets the *data alignment*. Valid values are: 1,2,4, or 8. See [11.8.3](#) for further details.

**ATTENTION** [project,gen]

The equation defines an attention character which is used in template files ("!" by default). See [4.8](#).

**BATEXT** [make,project,*batch submode*]

Sets the file extension for recompilation batch files (by default **.bat**). See [4.2.7](#).

**BATNAME** [make,project,*batch submode*]

Sets the batch file name.

The name of the project file will be used if no batch file name is explicitly specified. See [4.2.7](#).

**BATWIDTH** [make,project,*batch submode*]

Sets the maximum width of a line in a generated batch file (by default 128). See [4.2.7](#).

**BSDEF** [browse]

Sets the file extension for pseudo-definition modules created by the browser (by default **.odf**). See [4.2.5](#).

**BSTYLE** [browse]

Sets the *style* of generated pseudo-definition modules. See [8.1.2](#).

**CODE** [\*]

Sets the file extension for code files generated by the compiler (by default **.c**).

**COMPILERTHRES** [\*]

This equation is left for compatibility; it is ignored by the compiler. In versions prior to 2.50, it was used to fine tune the compiler's garbage collector.

See also [3.3](#).

**COMPILERHEAP** [\*]

Sets the maximum amount of heap memory (in bytes), that can be used by the compiler. For systems with virtual memory, we recommend to use a value which is less than the amount of physical memory.

Setting this equation to zero forces adaptive compiler heap size adjustment according to system load.

**COPYRIGHT** [compile]

This copyright note line will be inserted as a comment into all generated C code/header files. See [11.1](#), [11.8.5](#).

**DECOR** [\*]

The equation controls output of the xm utility. The value of equation is a string that contains any combination of letters "h", "t", "r", "p" (capital letters are also allowed). Each character turns on output of

**h** header line, which contains the name and version of the compiler's front-end and back-end

**p** progress messages

**r** compiler report: number of errors, lines, etc.

**t** the summary of compilation of multiple files

By default, the equation value is "hrt".

**DEF** [\*]

Sets the file extension for Modula-2 definition modules (by default **.def**).

**ENUMSIZE** [compile](*inline*)

Sets the default size for enumeration types in bytes (1,2, or 4). If an enumeration type does not fit in the current default size, the smallest suitable size will be taken.

**ENV\_HOST** [\*]

A symbolic name of the host platform. See also [3.10.2](#).

**ENV\_TARGET** [\*]

Sets a symbolic name of a target platform. A platform is a combination of operating system, file system, C compiler, its options, etc. See a list of available platforms in `xm.cfg`. See also [3.10.2](#).

**ERRFMT** [\*]

Sets the error message format. See [5.5](#) for details.

**ERRLIM** [\*]

Sets the maximum number of errors allowed for one compilation unit (by default 16).

**FILE** [compile]

The compiler sets this equation to the name of the currently compiled file. See also the **MODULE** equation.

**GCTHRESHOLD** [compile, *top-level module only*]

This equation is left for compatibility; it is ignored by the compiler. In versions prior to 2.50, it was used to fine tune the garbage collector.

See also [9.1](#).

**GENIDLEN** [compile]

The maximum length of an identifier in the generated C code (by default 30). **Note:** the identifier length limit cannot be less than 6 characters. Small values result in a more compact but less readable text. See also [11.2](#).

**GENINDENT** [compile]

Sets indentation in the generated code (by default 3 characters).

**GENWIDTH** [compile]

The maximum width of a line in generated C code/header files (by default 78).

**Note:** This equation is ignored and the maximum length of the line is not limited if at least one of the options **LINENO** and **GENKRC** is set ON.

**HEADER** [\*]

Sets the file extension for ANSI C header files generated by compiler (by default **.h**).

**HEAPLIMIT** [compile,*top-level module only*]

Sets the maximum amount of heap memory, that can be allocated by the generated program. The value is set in bytes.

Setting this equation to zero enables the run-time system to dynamically adjust heap size according to application's memory demands and system load.

The equation should be set when the top-level module of the program is compiled. We recommend to set it in a project file or the configuration file.

See also [9.1](#).

**LINK** [project]

Defines a command line, which will be executed after a successful completion of a project. As a rule, the equation is used for calling a linker or make utility.

See [2.4](#) for examples.

**LOOKUP** [\*]

Syntax:

```
-LOOKUP = pattern = directory { ";" directory }
```

The equation can be used for defining additional search paths that would complement those set in the redirection file. A configuration or project file may contain several **LOOKUP** equations; they are also permitted on the command line.

See also [3.5.1](#) and [4.5](#).

**MKFEXT** [gen]

Sets the file extension for generated makefiles (by default **.mkf**). See [4.2.4](#).

**MKFNAME** [gen]

Sets the name for a generated makefile. See [4.2.4](#).

**MOD** [\*]

Sets the file extension for Modula-2 implementation and program modules (by default **.mod**).

**MODULE** [compile]

The compiler sets this equation to the name of the currently compiled module. See also the **FILE** equation.

**OBERON** [\*]

Sets the file extension for Oberon-2 modules (by default **.ob2**).

**OBJEXT** [\*]

Sets the file extension for object files (by default **.obj**).

**PRJ** [compile,make,project]

In the **COMPILE** and **MAKE** operation modes, the equation defines a project file to read settings from. In the **PROJECT** mode, the compiler sets this equation to a project file name from the command line. See [4.2.3](#).

**PRJEXT** [compile,make,project]

Sets the file extension for project files (by default **.prj**). See [4.2.3](#).

**PROJECT** [compile,make,project]

If a project file name is defined, the compiler sets the equation to a project name without a file path and extension. For example, if the project file name is `prj/Work.prj`, the value of the equation is set to `Work`. The equation may be used, for instance, in a template file to set the name of the executable file.

**SETSIZE** [compile](*inline*)

Sets the default size for small (16 elements or less) set types in bytes (1, 2, or 4). If a set type does not fit in the current default size, the smallest suitable size will be taken.

**STACKLIMIT** [compile,*top-level module only*]

Sets the maximum size of the stack in a generated program. The value is set in bytes.

The equation should be set when a top-level module of a program is compiled. We recommend to set the option in the project or configuration file.

**SYM** [\*]

Sets the file extension for symbol files (by default **.sym**). See [4.3](#).

**TABSTOP** [gen]

When reading text files, the compiler replaces the ASCII TAB character with the number of spaces required to align text (by default **TABSTOP** is equal to 8). A wrong value may cause misplaced comments in a generated pseudo-definition module, incorrect error location in an error message, etc. We recommend to set this equation to the number used in your text editor.



**TEMPLATE** [gen]

Sets a name of a template file. See [4.8](#).

## 5.5 Error message format specification

The format in which XDS reports errors is user configurable through the **ERRFMT** equation. Its syntax is as follows:

```
{ string ", " [ argument ] ";" }
```

Any format specification allowed in the C procedure `printf` can be used in `string`.

Argument	Type	Meaning
line	integer	position in a source text
column	integer	position in a source text
file	string	name of a source file
module	string	module name
errmsg	string	message text
errno	integer	error code
language	string	Oberon-2 or Modula-2
mode	string	ERROR or WARNING or FAULT
utility	string	name of an utility

Argument names are not case sensitive. By default, the error message format includes the following clauses:

```
"(%s",file;          — a file name
"%d",line;           — a line number
",%d",column;        — a column number
") [%.1s] ",mode;    — the first letter of an error mode
"%s\n",errmsg;       — an error message
```

If a warning is reported for the file `test.mod` at line 5, column 6, the generated error message will look like this:

```
(test.mod 5,6) [W] variable declared but never used
```

## 5.6 The system module COMPILER

The system module **COMPILER** provides two procedures which allow you to use compile-time values of options and equations in your Modula-2 or Oberon-2 pro-

gram:

```
PROCEDURE OPTION(<constant string>): BOOLEAN;  
PROCEDURE EQUATION(<constant string>): <constant string>;
```

Both this procedures are evaluated at compile-time and may be used in constant expressions.

**Note:** The COMPILER module is non-standard.

### Examples

```
Printf.printf("This program is optimized for the %s CPU\n",  
              COMPILER.EQUATION("CPU"));  
  
IF COMPILER.OPTION("__GEN_C__") THEN  
    . . .  
END;
```

# Chapter 6

## Compiler messages

This chapter gives explanation for compiler diagnostics. For each error, an error number is provided along with a text of error message and an explanation. An error message can contain a format specifier in the form %d for a number or %s for a string. In this case, an argument (or arguments) is described on the next line.

In most cases the compiler prints a source line in which the error was found. The position of the error in the line is marked with a dollar sign placed directly before the point at which the error occurred.

### 6.1 Lexical errors

#### **E001**

`illegal character`

All characters within the Modula-2 or Oberon-2 character sets are acceptable. Control characters in the range 0C to 37C are ignored. All other characters, e.g. % are invalid.

#### **E002**

`comment not closed; started at line %d (line number)`

This error is reported if a closing comment bracket is omitted for a comment started at the given line.

#### **E003**

`illegal number`

This error is reported in the following cases:

- a numeric constant contains a character other than a digit (0 . . 7 for octal constants, 0 . . 9 for decimal, 0 . . 9 , A . . F for hexadecimal).
- an exponent indicator is not followed by an integer
- an illegal suffix is used after a number, e.g. "X" in Modula-2 or "C" or "B" in Oberon-2.

**E004**

string literal not closed or too long

This error usually occurs if a closing quote is omitted or does not match the opening quote. Note that a string literal is limited to a single line and its size cannot exceed 256 characters. In Modula-2, string concatenation may be used to build long literal strings.

**F005**

unexpected end of file

Input file ends before end of a module.

**E006**

identifier too long

Length of an identifier exceeds compiler limit (127 characters).

**F010**

source text read error

A read error occurs while reading source text.

**E012**

character constant too large (377C or 0FFX is maximum)

The meaning of this message is obvious.

**E171**

illegal structure of conditional compilation options

This error is reported if a structure of conditional IF statements is broken, e.g. there is no IF for an END, ELSE, or ELSIF clause or there is no END for an IF.

**E172**

conditional compilation option starts with incorrect symbol

IF, ELSIF, ELSE, END or identifier expected.

**F173**

pragma not closed; started at line %d (line number)

This error is reported if a closing bracket "`*>`" is omitted for a pragma started at the given line.

**F174**

unexpected end of file while skipping; see at %d (line number)

Input file ended while the compiler was skipping source text according to the conditional compilation statement. It may be a result of a missed `<* END *>` clause. Check the pragma at the given line.

**E175**

invalid pragma syntax

Check the manual for the pragma syntax.

## 6.2 Syntax errors

**E007**

identifier expected

The compiler expects an identifier at the indicated position.

**E008**

expected symbol %s (symbol)

The compiler expects the given symbol at the indicated position. The symbol may be one of the following:

	;	:	.	[	]	:=
(	)	{	}	,	=	..
DO	END	OF	THEN	TO	UNTIL	IMPORT
MODULE						

**E081**

expected start of factor

The compiler expects start of *factor* at the indicated position, i.e. an identifier, literal value, aggregate, left parenthesis, etc. See the syntax of the language for more information.

**E082**

expected start of declaration

The compiler expects start of declaration at the indicated position, i.e. one of the keywords: "CONST", "VAR", "TYPE", "PROCEDURE", "BEGIN", or "END".

**E083**

expected start of type

The compiler expects start of a type at the indicated position. See the syntax of the language for more information.

**E085**

expected expression

The compiler expects expression at the indicated position.

**E086**

expected start of statement

The compiler expects start of a statement at the indicated position. See the syntax of the language for more information.

## 6.3 Semantic errors

**E020**

undeclared identifier "%s" (name)

The given identifier has no definition in the current scope.

**E021**

type identifier "%s" shall not be used in declaring itself (name)

An identifier being declared as a type shall not be used in declaring that type, unless that type is a new pointer type or a new procedure type. This error will be reported for the following example

```
TYPE
  Rec = RECORD
    next: POINTER TO Rec;
  END;
```

use the following declarations instead:

```
TYPE
```

```
Ptr = POINTER TO Rec;  
Rec = RECORD  
    next: Ptr;  
END;
```

**E022**

identifier "%s" was already defined at %s[%d.%d]  
(name,file name,line,column)

**E028**

identifier "%s" was already defined in other module  
(name)

An identifier being declared is already known in the current context (the name used has some other meaning). If a file name and text position of previous definition are known, the compiler reports error 022 otherwise 028.

**E023**

procedure with forward declaration cannot be a code  
procedure

A forward declaration of a procedure is followed by a declaration of a code procedure.

**E024**

recursive import not allowed

A module imports itself. Example:

```
MODULE xyz;  
  
IMPORT xyz;  
  
END xyz.
```

**E025**

unsatisfied exported object

An object exported from a local object is not defined there. Example:

```
MODULE M; (* local module *)  
  
EXPORT Foo;  
  
END M;
```

**E026**

identifier "%s" is used in its own declaration, see  
%s[%d.%d]

An identifier cannot be used in its own declaration, like in:

```
CONST c = 1;  
PROCEDURE proc;  
    CONST c = c + 1;  
END proc;
```

**E027**

illegal usage of module identifier "%s" (module name)

An identifier denoting module cannot be used at the indicated position.

**E029**

incompatible types: "%s" "%s"(type,type)

**E030**

incompatible types

The compiler reports this error in the following cases:

- operands in an expression are not expression compatible
- an expression is not compatible with the type of the variable in an assignment statement
- an actual parameter is not compatible with the type of the formal parameter in a procedure call

The compiler reports error 29 if it can display incompatible types and error 30 otherwise.

**E031**

identifier does not denote a type

An identifier denoting a type is expected at the indicated position.

**E032**

scalar type expected

The compiler expects a scalar type (real, integer, cardinal, range, enumeration, CHAR, or BOOLEAN).

**E033**

ordinal type expected



The compiler expects a value, variable, or type designator of ordinal type, i.e. CHAR, BOOLEAN, enumeration, integer, or cardinal type or a subrange of one of those types.

**E034**

invalid combination of parameters in type conversion

According to the language definition this combination of parameters in a call of the standard procedure VAL is not valid.

**E035**

NEW: "%s" not known in this scope (ALLOCATE or DYNALLOCATE)

A call to NEW is treated as a call to ALLOCATE (or DYNALLOCATE for open arrays). The required procedure is not visible in this scope. It must be either imported or implemented.

**Note:** In XDS, the default memory management routines may be enabled by setting the **STORAGE** option ON.

**E036**

DISPOSE: "%s" not known in this scope (DEALLOCATE or DYNDEALLOCATE)

A call to DISPOSE is treated as a call to DEALLOCATE (or DYNDEALLOCATE for open arrays). The required procedure is not visible in this scope. It must be either imported or implemented.

**Note:** In xds, the default memory management routines may be enabled by setting the **STORAGE** option ON.

**E037**

procedure "%s" should be a proper procedure (procedure name)

In Modula-2, calls of NEW and DISPOSE are substituted by calls of ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE (for dynamic arrays by calls of DYNALLOCATE and DYNDEALLOCATE). The error is reported if one of those procedures is declared as a function.

**E038**

illegal number of parameters "%s" (procedure name)

In Modula-2, calls of NEW and DISPOSE are substituted by calls of ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE (for dynamic arrays by calls of DYNALLOCATE and DYNDEALLOCATE). The error is reported if a number of parameters in the declaration of a substitution procedure is wrong.

**E039**

procedure "%s": %s parameter expected for "%s" (procedure name,"VAR" or "value",parameter name)

In Modula-2, calls of NEW and DISPOSE are substituted by calls of ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE (for dynamic arrays by calls of DYNALLOCATE and DYNDEALLOCATE). The error is reported if the kind (variable or value) of the given parameter in the declaration of a substitution procedure is wrong.

**E040**

procedure "%s": type of parameter "%s" mismatch

In Modula-2, calls of NEW and DISPOSE are substituted by calls of ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE (for dynamic arrays by calls of DYNALLOCATE and DYNDEALLOCATE). The error is reported if a type of the given parameter in the declaration of a substitution procedure is wrong.

**E041**

guard or test type is not an extension of variable type

In an Oberon-2 type test ( $v \text{ IS } T$ ) or type guard ( $v(T)$ ),  $T$  should be an extension of the static type of  $v$ .

**E043**

illegal result type of procedure

A type cannot be a result type of a function procedure (language or implementation restriction).

**E044**

incompatible result types

A result type of a procedure does not match those of a forward definition or definition of an overridden method.

**E046**

illegal usage of open array type

Open arrays (ARRAY OF) usage is restricted to pointer base types, element types of open array types, and formal parameter types.

**E047**

fewer actual than formal parameters

The number of actual parameters in a procedure call is less than the number of formal parameters.

**E048**

more actual than formal parameters

The number of actual parameters in a procedure call is greater than the number of formal parameters.

**E049**

sequence parameter should be of SYSTEM.BYTE or SYSTEM.LOC type

The only valid types of a sequence parameter are SYSTEM.BYTE and SYSTEM.LOC.

**E050**

object is not array

**E051**

object is not record

**E052**

object is not pointer

**E053**

object is not set

The compiler expects an object of the given type at the indicated position.

**E054**

object is not variable

The compiler expects a variable (designator) at the indicated position.

**E055**

object is not procedure: %s (procedure name)

The compiler expects a procedure designator at the indicated position.

**E057**

a call of super method is valid in method redifinition only

A call of a super method (type-bound procedure bound to a base type) is valid only in a redifinition of that method:

```
PROCEDURE (p: P) Foo;  
BEGIN  
  p.Foo^  
END Foo.
```

**E058**

type-bound procedure is not defined for the base type

In a call of a super method (type-bound procedure bound to a base type)  $p.Foo^{\wedge}$  either `Foo` is not defined for a base type of  $p$  or there is no base type.

**E059**

object is neither a pointer nor a VAR-parameter record

The Oberon-2 compiler reports this error in the following cases:

- in a type test  $v \text{ IS } T$  or type guard  $v(T)$ ,  $v$  should be a designator denoting either pointer or variable parameter of a record type;  $T$  should be a record or pointer type
- in a declaration of type-bound procedure a receiver may be either a variable parameter of a record type or a value parameter of a pointer type.

**E060**

pointer not bound to record or array type

In Oberon-2, a pointer base type must be an array or record type. For instance, the declaration `TYPE P = POINTER TO INTEGER` is invalid.

**E061**

dimension too large or negative

The second parameter of the `LEN` function is either negative or larger than the maximum dimension of the given array.

**E062**

pointer not bound to record

The Oberon-2 compiler reports this error in the following cases:

- in a type test  $v \text{ IS } T$  or type guard  $v(T)$ , if  $v$  is a pointer it should be a pointer to record
- in a type-bound procedure declaration, if a receiver is a pointer, it should be a pointer to record

**E064**

base type of open array aggregate should be a simple type

A base type of an open array aggregate (`ARRAY OF T{ }`) cannot be a record or array type.

**E065**

the record type is from another module

A procedure bound to a record type should be declared in the same module as the record type.

**E067**

receiver type should be exported %s (name of type)

A receiver type for an exported type-bound procedure should also be exported.

**E068**

this type-bound procedure cannot be called from a  
record

The receiver parameter of this type-bound procedure is of a pointer type, hence it cannot be called from a designator of a record type. Note that if a receiver parameter is of a record type, such type-bound procedure can be called from a designator of a pointer type as well.

**E069**

wrong mode of receiver type

A mode of receiver type in a type-bound procedure redefinition does not match the previous definition.

**E071**

non-Oberon type cannot be used in specific Oberon-2  
construct

A (object of) non-Oberon type (imported from a non-Oberon module or declared with direct language specification) cannot be used in specific Oberon-2 constructs (type-bound procedures, type guards, etc).

**E072**

illegal order of redefinition of type-bound procedures

A type-bound procedure for an extended type is defined before a type-bound procedure with the same name for a base type.

**E074**

redefined type-bound procedure should be exported

A redefined type-bound procedure should be exported if both its receiver type and redefining procedure are exported.

**E075**

function procedure without RETURN statement

A function procedure has no RETURN statement and so cannot return a result.

**E076**

value is required

The compiler expects an expression at the indicated position.

**E078**

SIZE (TSIZE) cannot be applied to an open array

Standard functions SIZE and TSIZE cannot be used to evaluate size of an open array designator or type in the standard mode. If language extensions are enabled, the compiler allows to apply SIZE to an open array designator, but not type.

**E087**

expression should be constant

The compiler cannot evaluate this expression at compile time. It should be constant according to the language definition.

**E088**

identifier does not match block name

An identifier at the end of a procedure or module does not match the one in the procedure or module header. The error may occur as a result of incorrect pairing of ENDS with headers.

**E089**

procedure not implemented "%s"

An exported procedure or forward procedure is not declared. This error often occurs due to comment misplacement.

**E090**

proper procedure is expected

A function is called as a proper procedure. It must be called in an expression. A function result can be ignored for procedures defined as "C", "Pascal", "StdCall" or "SysCall" only. See [10.2](#).

**E091**

call of proper procedure in expression

A proper procedure is called in an expression.

**E092**

code procedure is not allowed in definition module

**E093**

not allowed in definition module

The error is reported for a language feature that can not be used in definition module, including:

- local modules
- elaboration of an opaque type
- forward declaration
- procedure or module body
- read-only parameters

**E094**

allowed only in definition module

The error is reported for a language feature that can be used in definition module only, i.e. read-only variables and record fields (extended Modula-2).

**E095**

allowed only in global scope

The error is reported for a language feature that can be used only in the global module scope, including:

- elaboration of an opaque type (Modula-2)
- export marks (Oberon-2)
- type-bound procedure definition (Oberon-2)

**E096**

unsatisfied opaque type "%s"

An opaque type declared in a definition module must be elaborated in the implementation module.

**E097**

unsatisfied forward type "%s"

A type T can be introduced in a declaration of a pointer type as in:

```
TYPE Foo = POINTER TO T;
```

This type T must then be declared at the same scope.

**E098**

allowed only for value parameter

The error is reported for a language feature that can be applied to value parameter only (not to VAR parameters), such as a read-only parameter mark (see [7.6.8](#)).

**E099**

RETURN allowed only in procedure body

In Oberon-2, the RETURN statement is not allowed in a module body.

**E100**

illegal order of declarations

In Oberon-2, all constants, types and variables in one declaration sequence must be declared before any procedure declaration.

**E102**

language extension is not allowed %s (specification)

The error is reported for a language feature that can be used only if language extensions are switched on. See options **M2EXTENSIONS** and **O2EXTENSIONS**.

**E107**

shall not have a value less than 0

The error is reported if a value of a (constant) expression cannot be negative, including:

- second operand of DIV and MOD
- repetition count in an array constructor (expr BY count)

**E109**

forward type cannot be opaque

A forward type T (declared as TYPE Foo = POINTER TO T) cannot be elaborated as an opaque type, i.e. declared as TYPE T = <opaque type>).

**E110**

illegal length, %d was expected (expected number of elements)

Wrong number of elements in an array constructor.

**E111**

repetition counter must be an expression of a whole number type

A repetition counter in an array constructor must be of a whole number type.

**E112**

expression for field "%s" was expected (field name)

The error is reported if a record constructor does not contain an expression for the given field.



**E113**

no variant is associated with the value of the expression

The error is reported if a record constructor for a record type with variant part does not have a variant for the given value of a record tag and the ELSE clause is omitted.

**E114**

cannot declare type-bound procedure: "%s" is declared as a field

A type-bound procedure has the same name as a field already declared in that type or one of its base types.

**E116**

field "%s" is not exported (field name)

The given field is not exported, put export mark into the declaration of the record type.

**E118**

base type is not allowed for non-Oberon record

A record type can be defined as an extension of another type, only if it is an Oberon-2 record type.

**E119**

variant fields are not allowed in Oberon record

A record with variant parts cannot be declared as an Oberon-2 record.

**E120**

field of Oberon type is not allowed in non-Oberon record

This is considered an error because garbage collector does not trace non-Oberon records and reference to an object may be lost.

**E121**

illegal use of type designator "%s"

A type designator cannot be used in a statement position.

**E122**

expression out of bounds

A value which can be checked at compile-time is out of range.

**E123**

designator is read-only

A designator marked as read-only cannot be used in a position where its value may be changed.

**E124**

low bound greater than high bound

A lower bound of a range is greater than high bound.

**E125**

EXIT not within LOOP statement

An EXIT statement specifies termination of the enclosing LOOP statement. This EXIT is not within any LOOP.

**E126**

case label defined more than once

In a CASE statement all labels must have different values. The label at the indicated position is already used in this CASE statement.

**E128**

FOR-loop control variable must be declared in the local scope

A control variable of a FOR loop must be declared locally in the procedure or module which body contains the loop.

**E129**

more expressions than fields in a record type

In a record constructor there are more expressions than there are fields in the record type (or in this variant of a variant record type).

**E131**

zero step in FOR statement

In a FOR statement, the step cannot be equal to zero.

**E132**

shall be an open array designator

If language extensions are OFF, the standard procedure HIGH can be applied to open arrays only, otherwise to any array designator.

**E133**

implementation limit exceeded for set base type  
(length > %d)

The compiler restricts length of a base type of set  $(\text{MAX}(\text{base}) - \text{MIN}(\text{base}) + 1)$ . Note, that the limit does not depend on the low bound, so the following set types are valid:

```
SET OF [-256..-5]
SET OF [MAX(INTEGER)-512..MAX(INTEGER)]
```

**E134**

must be value of unsigned type

The compiler expects a parameter of this standard procedure to be a value of an unsigned type.

**E135**

must be value of pointer type

The compiler expects a parameter of this standard procedure to be a value of a pointer type. **Note:** the `SYSTEM.ADDRESS` type is defined as `POINTER TO LOC`.

**E136**

must be type designator

The compiler expects a parameter of this standard procedure to be a type designator.

**E137**

numeric constant does not have a defined storage size

The compiler must know the size of a value in the given context. A numeric constant cannot be used at the indicated position.

**E139**

must be (qualified) identifier which denotes variable

The ISO standard requires an "entire designator" in this context, e.g. as a parameter of the `SIZE` function. It may be either a variable (which may be a formal parameter) or a field of a record variable within a `WITH` statement that applies to that variable.

**E140**

interrupt procedures are not implemented yet

Oberon compilers from ETH implements so-called interrupt procedures, marked by the symbol "+".

```
PROCEDURE + Foo;
```

In XDS, this feature is not implemented.

**E141**

opaque type can not be defined as Oberon pointer

A Modula-2 opaque type cannot be elaborated as an Oberon-2 pointer. See Chapter 10.

**E143**

not allowed in Oberon

The compiler reports this error for language features that are valid in Modula-2 but not in Oberon-2, including:

- enumeration types
- range types
- local modules

**E144**

pointer and record types are mixed in type test

In an Oberon-2 type test  $v \text{ IS } T$  or a type guard  $v(T)$ , both  $v$  and  $T$  must be either pointers or records.

**E145**

control variable must not be a formal parameter

According to ISO Modula-2, a control variable in a FOR statement cannot be a formal parameter (either VAR or value).

**E146**

control variable cannot be exported

A variable used as a control variable in a FOR statement or an Oberon-2 WITH statement cannot be exported.

**E147**

control variable cannot be threatened

A control variable of a FOR statement or an Oberon-2 WITH statement has been threatened inside the body of the statement, or in a nested procedure called from the body. Threatening actions include assignment and passing as a VAR parameter to a user-defined or standard procedure (ADR, INC, DEC, etc). The compiler also reports the error 158 to indicate the exact place of threatening.

**E148**

finalization is allowed only in module block

A procedure body can not contain a finalization part.

**E149**

RETRY is allowed only in exceptional part of block

This RETRY statement is outside an exceptional part of a block.

**E150**

wrong value of direct language specification

A value must be either one of the strings ("Modula", "Oberon", "C", "Pascal", "SysCall", or "StdCall") or the corresponding integer value. We recommend to use strings, integer values are preserved for backward compatibility.

**E151**

must be of integer type

The compiler expects a variable of an integer type.

**E152**

incompatible calling conventions: "%s" "%s"

**E153**

incompatible calling conventions

Two procedure types have different calling conventions. The error can reported in the following cases:

- a procedure is assigned to a procedure variable
- a procedure is passed as a parameter
- two procedure values are compared

The compiler reports error 152 if it can show incompatible types and error 153 otherwise.

**E154**

procedure "%s" does not match previous definition:  
was: %s now: %s (procedure name,proctype,proctype)

**E155**

procedure "%s" does not match previous definition (procedure name)

A procedure heading must have the same number of parameters, the same parameter modes (variable or value) and the same types as in the previous declaration. A previous declaration may be one of the following:

- procedure declaration in a definition module

- forward procedure declaration
- type-bound procedure declaration in a base type

The compiler reports error 154 if it can show incompatible types and error 155 otherwise.

**E156**

procedure designator is expected

A designator which appears to be called (e.g. `Foo(...)`) does not denote a procedure.

**E158**

control variable "%s" is threatened here (variable name)

A control variable of a FOR statement or an Oberon-2WITH statement is threatened at the indicated position. It means that its value may be changed. See also error 147.

**E159**

type of aggregate is not set or array or record

An object which appears to be an aggregate (e.g. `Foo{...}`) begins with an identifier which is not a set, record, or array type.

**E160**

invalid parameter specification: expected NIL

Only one special kind of variable parameter is implemented: `VAR [NIL]`. It means that NIL may be passed to this parameter.

**E161**

`VAR [NIL]` parameter expected

A parameter of the `SYSTEM.VALID` function must be a `VAR [NIL]` parameter.

**E162**

%s value should be in %{} (not "%s") (equation, set of valid values, new value)

This error is reported for a wrong setting of `ALIGNMENT`, `ENUMSIZE`, or `SETSIZE` equation.

**E163**

control variable cannot not be volatile

A control variable of a FOR statement cannot be marked as volatile. See the **VOLATILE** option.

**E200**

not yet implemented

This language feature is not implemented yet.

**E201**

real overflow or underflow in constant expression

This error is to be reported if a real overflow (underflow) occurs during evaluation of a constant expression.

**E202**

integer overflow in constant expression

The compiler uses 64-bits (signed) arithmetics for whole numbers. The error is reported if an overflow occurs during evaluation of a constant expression. In the following example, an error will be reported for the assignment statement, while constant definition is valid.

```
MODULE Test;  
  
CONST  
  VeryBigConstant = MAX(CARDINAL)*2;           (* OK *)  
  TooBigConstant = VeryBigConstant*VeryBigConstant;  (* OK *)  
  
END Test.
```

**E203**

division by zero

The second operand of a DIV, MOD, REM, or "/" operator is zero.

**E206**

array length is too large or less than zero

The array length is either negative or exceeds implementation limit.

**E208**

CASE statement always fails

The error is reported if a case select expression can be evaluated at compile-time and there is no variant corresponding to its value, and the ELSE clause is omitted. If not constantly evaluated, this CASE statement would cause the `caseSelectException` exception at run-time.

**E219**

too many nested open array types (implementation limit)

`%d`) (implementation limit)

The compiler (more precisely, run-time support) puts a limit on the number of nested open array types (or dimensions). Note, that there is no limit for arrays with specified length, because such arrays do not require special support in run-time system.

#### **E220**

heirarchy of record extensions too high  
(implementation limit `%d`) (implementation limit)

The run-time system puts a limit on the level of record extensions. It is required for efficient implementaion of type tests and type guards.

#### **E221**

procedure declaration nesting limit (`%d`) has been  
exceeded (implementation limit)

The compiler puts a limit on the number of procedures nested inside each other. When modules are nested inside procedures, only the level of procedure declarations is counted.

#### **E281**

type-bound procedure is not valid as procedure value  
A type-bound procedure cannot be assigned to a variable of procedure type.

#### **E282**

local procedure is not valid as procedure value "`%s`"  
(procedure name)

A procedure local to another one cannot be assigned to a variable of procedure type.

#### **E283**

code (or external) procedure is not valid as procedure  
value

A code procedure and external procedure cannot be assigned to a variable of procedure type.

## **6.4 Symbol files read/write errors**

#### **F190**

incorrect header in symbol file "`%s`" (module name)



A symbol file for the given module is corrupted. Recompile it.

**F191**

incorrect version of symbol file "%s" (%d instead of %d) (module name, symfile version, current version)

The given symbol file is generated by a different version of the compiler. Recompile the respective source or use compatible versions of the compiler and/or symbol file.

**F192**

key inconsistency of imported module "%s" (module name)

The error occurs if an interface of some module is changed but not all its clients (modules that imports from it) were recompiled. For example, let A imports from B and M; B in turn imports from M:

```

DEFINITION MODULE M;      DEFINITION MODULE B;      MODULE A;
                           IMPORT M;                  IMPORT M,B;
END M.                     END B.                     END A.

```

Let us recompile M.def, B.def and then M.def again. The error will be reported when compiling A.mod, because version keys of module M imported through B is not equal to the version key of M imported directly.

To fix the problem modules must be compiled in appropriate order. We recommend to use the XDS compiler make facility, i.e. to compile your program in the MAKE (see 4.2.2) or PROJECT (see 4.2.3) operation mode. If you always use the make facility this error will never be reported.

**F193**

generation of new symbol file not allowed

The Oberon-2 compiler creates a temporary symbol file every time a module is compiled, compares that symbol file with the existing one and overwrites it with the new one if necessary. When the **CHANGESYM** option is OFF (by default), the compiler reports an error if the symbol file (and hence the module interface) had been changed and does not replace the old symbol file.

**Note:** if the **M2CMPSYM** option is set ON, the same applies to compilation of a Modula-2 definition module, i.e., the **CHANGESYM** option should be set if the module interface has been changed.

**F194**

module name does not match symbol file name "%s" (module name)

A module name used in an `IMPORT` clause must be equal to the actual name of the module, written in the module heading.

**F195**

cannot read symbol file "%s" generated by %s (module name, compiler name)

The symbol file for the given module is generated by another XDS compiler. Native code compilers can read symbol files generated by **XDS-C** on the same platform, but not vice versa.

## 6.5 Internal errors

This section lists internal compiler errors. In some cases such a error may occur as a result of inadequate recovery from previous errors in your source text. In any case we recommend to provide us with a bug report, including:

- version of the compiler
- description of your environment (OS, CPU)
- minimal source text reproducing the error

**F103**

INTERNAL ERROR(ME): value expected

**F104**

INTERNAL ERROR(ME): designator expected

**F105**

INTERNAL ERROR(ME): statement expected

**F106**

INTERNAL ERROR(ME): node type = NIL

**F142**

INTERNAL ERROR(ME): can not generate code

**F196**

INTERNAL ERROR: incorrect sym ident %d while reading symbol file "%s"

**F197**

INTERNAL ASSERT(%d) while reading symbol file "%s"

## 6.6 Warnings

In many cases a warning may help you to find a bug or a serious drawback in your source text. We recommend not to switch warnings off and carefully check all of them. In many cases warnings have helped us to find and fix bugs very quickly (note that XDS compilers are written in XDS Oberon-2 and Modula-2).

Warnings described in this section are reported by both **XDS-C** and **Native XDS**. Each of these products may report additional warnings. Native XDS compilers fulfil more accurate analysis of the source code and report more warnings.

### **W300**

variable declared but never used

This variable is of no use, it is not exported, assigned, passed as a parameter, or used in an expression. The compiler will not allocate space for it.

### **W301**

parameter is never used

This parameter is not used in the procedure.

### **W302**

value was assigned but never used

The current version of the compiler does not report this warning.

### **W303**

procedure declared but never used

This procedure is not exported, called or assigned. The compiler will not generate it.

### **W304**

possibly used before definition "%s" (variable name)

This warning is reported if a value of the variable may be undefined at the indicated position. Note, that it is just a warning. The compiler may be mistaken in complex contexts. In the following example, "y" will be assigned at the first iteration, however, the compiler will report a warning, because it does not trace execution of the FOR statement.

```
PROCEDURE Foo;  
  VAR x,y: INTEGER;  
BEGIN  
  FOR x:=0 TO 2 DO  
    IF x = 0 THEN y:=1
```

```

        ELSE INC(y)  (* warning is reported here *)
        END;
    END;
END Foo;

```

This warning is not reported for global variables.

### **W305**

constant declared but never used

The current version of the compiler does not report this warning.

### **W310**

infinite loop

Execution of this loop (LOOP, WHILE or REPEAT) will not terminate normally. It means that statements after the loop will never be executed and the compiler will not generate them. Check that the loop was intentionally made infinite.

### **W311**

unreachable code

This code cannot be executed and the compiler will not generate it (dead code elimination). It may be statements after a RETURN, ASSERT( FALSE ), HALT, infinite loop, statements under constant FALSE condition (IF FALSE THEN), etc.

### **W312**

loop is executed exactly once

It may be a loop like

```
FOR i:=1 TO 1 DO ... END;
```

or

```
LOOP ...; EXIT END;
```

Check that you wrote it intentionally.

### **W314**

variable "%s" has compile time defined value here

The compiler was able to determine the run-time value of the given variable (due to constant propagation) and will use it instead of accessing the variable. For the following example

```
i:=5; IF i = 5 THEN S END;
```

the compiler will generate:

```
i:=5; S;
```

This warning is not reported for global variables.

### W315

NIL dereference

The compiler knows that a value of a pointer variable is NIL (due to constant propagation), e.g:

```
p:=NIL;
p^.field:=1;
```

The code will be generated and will cause "invalidLocation" exception at run-time.

This warning is not reported for global variables.

### W316

this SYSTEM procedure is not described in Modula-2 ISO standard

This warning is reported in order to simplify porting your program to other Modula-2 compilers.

### W317

VAR parameter is used here, check that it is not threatened inside WITH

A variable parameter of a pointer type is used as a control variable in an Oberon-2 WITH statement. The compiler cannot check that it is not changed inside WITH. In the the following example "ptr" and, hence, "p" becomes NIL inside WITH:

```
VAR ptr: P;

PROCEDURE proc(VAR p: P);
BEGIN
  WITH p: P1 DO
    ptr:=NIL;
    p.i:=1;
  END;
END proc;

BEGIN
  proc(ptr);
END
```

We recommend to avoid using variable parameters of pointer types in `WITH` statements.

**W318**

redundant `FOR` statement

The `FOR` statement is redundant (and not generated) if its low and high bounds can be evaluated at compile-time and it would be executed zero times, or if its body is empty.

## 6.7 Pragma warnings

**W320**

undeclared option "`%s`"

An undeclared option is used. Its value is assumed to be `FALSE`.

**W322**

undeclared equation "`%s`"

An undeclared equation is used. Its value is undefined.

**W321**

option "`%s`" is already defined

**W323**

equation "`%s`" is already defined

The option (equation) is already defined, second declaration is ignored.

**W390**

obsolete pragma setting

The syntax used is obsolete. The next release of the compiler will not understand it. We recommend to rewrite the clause using the new syntax.

## 6.8 Native XDS warnings

**W900**

redundant code eliminated

This warning is reported if a program fragment does not influence to the program execution, e.g:

```
i:=1;
```

```
i:=2;
```

The first assignemnt is redundant and will be deleted.

#### **W901**

redundant code not eliminated - can raise exception

The same as W900, but the redundant code is preserved because it can raise an exception, e.g.:

```
i:=a DIV b; (* raises exception if b <= 0 *)
i:=2;
```

#### **W902**

constant condition eliminated

The warning is reported if a boolean condition can be evaluated at run-time, e.g.

```
IF (i=1) & (i=1) THEN (* the second condition is TRUE *)
```

or

```
j:=2;
IF (i=1) OR (j#2) THEN (* the second condition is FALSE *)
```

#### **W903**

function result is not used

The compiler ignores function result, like in:

```
IF Foo() THEN END;
```

#### **W910**

realValueException will be raised here

#### **W911**

wholeValueException will be raised here

#### **W912**

wholeDivException will be raised here

#### **W913**

indexException will be raised here

#### **W914**

rangeException will be raised here

#### **W915**

invalidLocation exception will be raised here

A warning from this group is reported if the compiler determines that the exception will be raised in the code corresponding to this program fragment. In this case the fragment is omitted and the compiler generates a call of a run-time procedure which will raise this exception.

## 6.9 XDS-C errors

This section describes errors reported by the C code generator (back-end). The code generator is invoked only if no errors are found by the language parser.

### **E1001**

parameter "%s" is not declared (parameter name)

An unknown parameter name is used in a protocol string of a code procedure.

### **E1002**

can not generate recursive type definition

### **E1018**

can not generate recursive type declaration

In C, a recursive type definition must contain a struct, while in Modula-2/Oberon-2 this is done via forward declaration of a pointer type. The following types cannot be generated in C:

```
TYPE P = POINTER TO P;
```

or

```
TYPE P = POINTER TO A;
      A = ARRAY [0..1] OF P;
```

We feel that such types are of very low importance in real programs.

### **E1003**

external names conflict: "%s.%s" and "%s.%s"

The compiler forms an external name (name of exported object) in the form <module name>\_<object name>. The error is reported if external names of two distinct objects are equal.

### **E1004**

external name "%s.%s" conflict with standard name  
(xm.kwd)

The same as previous error, an external name is equal to a name defined in the xm.kwd file.

### **E1005**

unimplemented system procedure

This standard (system) procedure is not implemented yet.

### **E1006**

undefined array length for dimension %d



The LEN function cannot be applied to an open array parameter of a procedure with the following calling conventions: "C", "SysCall", "StdCall". In the case of a "normal" (Oberon-2/Modula-2) procedure the compiler passes an additional parameter for each dimension (length in this dimension). For "C", "SysCall", "StdCall" procedures only an address of an array is passed.

**E1007**

undefined array size for dimension %d

The compiler cannot evaluate the array size.

**E1014**

can not get size of (%s) (type)

The error is reported if the compiler cannot evaluate size of this type. See also the **GENSIZE** option.

**E1015**

too many parameters

The implementation puts a limit on the number of parameters of a generated procedure (256). Note, that a source procedure may have less parameters, because additional parameters are passed for:

- open array parameters
- variable parameters of record type in Oberon-2
- functions returning compound types

**E1008**

can not generate expression

**E1009**

can not generate l-value type cast

**E1010**

can not generate type conversion

**E1011**

can not generate aggregate

**E1012**

can not generate statement

**E1013**

cannot generate constant aggregate of this type

**E1016**

can not generate type designator

**E1017**

can not generate type declaration

**E1019**

can not generate object declaration

An error of this group usually means that some rare language feature (or combination) is not implemented yet. Please provide us with a bug report containing a minimal test case.

# Chapter 7

## XDS Modula-2

This chapter covers details of the XDS implementation of the Modula-2 language. In the standard mode<sup>1</sup> XDS Modula-2 complies with ISO 10514 (See the statement of compliance and further details in 7.1). The compatibility rules are described in 7.4. The differences between ISO Modula-2 and the language described in the 4th edition of Wirth’s “Programming in Modula-2” [PIM] are listed in 7.2. Language extensions are described in 7.6.

### 7.1 ISO Standard compliance

XDS Modula-2 partially complies with the requirements of ISO 10514. The details of non-conformities are as follows:

- Not all libraries are available in the current release.
- The current release may impose some restrictions on using new language features.

See Chapter A for further details.

#### 7.1.1 Ordering of declarations

XDS Modula-2 is a so-called ‘single-pass’ implementation. It means that all identifiers must be declared before use. According to the International Standard this *declare-before-use* approach is perfectly valid. The alternative approach,

---

<sup>1</sup>When options **M2EXTENSIONS** and **M2ADDTYPES** are OFF

(*declare-before-use-in-declarations*), can be used in so-called ‘multi-pass’ implementations.

A forward declaration must be used to allow forward references to a procedure which actual declaration appears later in the source text.

### Example

```
PROCEDURE a(x: INTEGER); FORWARD;
(* FORWARD declaration *)

PROCEDURE b(x: INTEGER);
BEGIN
    a(x-1);
END b;

PROCEDURE a(n: INTEGER);
(* proper procedure declaration *)
BEGIN
    b(n-1);
END a;
```

To provide source compatibility between ‘single-pass’ and ‘multi-pass’ implementations, the Standard requires that all conforming ‘multi-pass’ implementations accept and correctly process the FORWARD directive.

## 7.2 New language’s features

The language described in the International Standard varies in many details from the one described in Wirth’s “Programming in Modula-2”[PIM].

The most important innovations are

- complex numbers
- module finalization
- exception handling
- array and record constructors

- four new system modules
- standard library

**Note:** The system modules (except the module `SYSTEM`) are not embedded in the compiler and are implemented as separate modules.

### 7.2.1 Lexis

The ISO Modula-2 has some new keywords (table 7.1, page 99) and pervasive identifiers (table 7.2, page 100), and provides alternatives for some symbols (table 7.3, page 100). It also introduces the syntax for source code directives (or pragmas):

```
Pragma = "<*" pragma_body ">"
```

The Standard does not specify a syntax of `pragma_body`. In XDS, source code directives are used for in-line option setting and for conditional compilation. See 7.7.1 for further details.

AND	ARRAY	BEGIN
BY	CASE	CONST
DEFINITION	DIV	DO
ELSE	ELSIF	END
EXIT	EXCEPT (7.2.13)	EXPORT
FINALLY (7.2.12)	FOR	FORWARD (7.1.1)
FROM	IF	IMPLEMENTATION
IMPORT	IN	LOOP
MOD	MODULE	NOT
OF	OR	PACKEDSET (7.2.3)
POINTER	PROCEDURE	QUALIFIED
RECORD	REM (7.2.9)	RETRY (7.2.13)
REPEAT	RETURN	SET
THEN	TO	TYPE
UNTIL	VAR	WHILE
WITH		

Table 7.1: Modula-2 keywords

ABS	BITSET
BOOLEAN	CARDINAL
CAP	CHR
CHAR	COMPLEX (7.2.2)
CMPLX (7.2.2)	DEC
DISPOSE	EXCL
FALSE	FLOAT
HALT	HIGH
IM (7.2.2)	INC
INCL	INT (7.2.10)
INTERRUPTIBLE (7.2.18)	INTEGER
LENGTH (7.2.4)	LFLOAT (7.2.10)
LONGCOMPLEX (7.2.2)	LONGREAL
MAX	MIN
NEW	NIL
ODD	ORD
PROC	PROTECTION (7.2.18)
RE (7.2.2)	REAL
SIZE	TRUE
TRUNC	UNINTERRUPTIBLE (7.2.18)
VAL	

Table 7.2: Modula-2 pervasive identifiers

Symbol	Meaning	Alternative
[	left bracket	( !
]	right bracket	! )
{	left brace	( :
}	right brace	: )
	case separator	!
^	dereference	@

Table 7.3: Modula-2 alternative symbols

### 7.2.2 Complex types

Types `COMPLEX` and `LONGCOMPLEX` can be used to represent complex numbers. These types differ in the range and precision. The `COMPLEX` type is defined as a `(REAL, REAL)` pair, while `LONGCOMPLEX` consists of a pair of `LONGREAL` values.

There is no notation for a complex literal. A complex value can be obtained by applying the standard function `CMPLX` to two reals. If both `CMPLX` arguments are real constants the result is the complex constant.

```
CONST i = CMPLX(0.0, 1.0);
```

If both expressions are of the `REAL` type, or if one is of the `REAL` type and the other is a real constant, the function returns a `COMPLEX` value. If both expressions are of the `LONGREAL` type, or if one is of the `LONGREAL` type and the other is a real constant the function returns a `LONGCOMPLEX` value. The following table summarizes the permitted types and the result type:

	REAL	LONGREAL	real constant
REAL	REAL	error	COMPLEX
LONGREAL	error	LONGCOMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX
real constant	COMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX	complex constant

Standard functions `RE` and `IM` can be used to obtain a real or imaginary part of a value of a complex type. Both functions have one formal parameter. If the actual parameter is of the `COMPLEX` type, both functions return a `REAL` value; if the parameter is of the `LONGCOMPLEX` type, functions return a `LONGREAL` value; otherwise the parameter should be a complex constant and functions return a real constant.

```
CONST one = IM(CMPLX(0.0, 1.0));
```

There are four arithmetic binary operators for operands of a complex type: addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (\*), and division (/). The following table indicates the result of an operation for permitted combinations:

	COMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX	complex constant
COMPLEX	COMPLEX	error	COMPLEX
LONGCOMPLEX	error	LONGCOMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX
complex constant	COMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX	complex constant

There are two arithmetic unary operators that can be applied to the values of a complex type: identity (+) and negation (-). The result is of the operand's type.

Two complex comparison operators are provided for operands of complex type: equality (=) and inequality (<>).

### Example

```
PROCEDURE abs(z: COMPLEX): REAL;
BEGIN
    RETURN RealMath.sqrt(RE(z)*RE(z)+IM(z)*IM(z));
END abs;
```

### 7.2.3 Sets and packedsets

A set or packedset<sup>2</sup> type defines a new elementary type whose set of values is the power set of an associated ordinal type called the *base type* of the set or packedset type.

```
SetType          = SET OF Type;
PackedsetType    = PACKEDSET OF Type;
```

The International Standard does not require a specific representation for set types. Packedset types representation has to be mapped to the individual bits of a particular underlying architecture. The standard type BITSET is a predefined packedset type.

The current XDS implementation does not distinguish between set and packedset types. A set of at least 256 elements can be defined.

All set operators, namely union (+), difference (-), intersection (\*), and symmetrical difference (/), can be applied to the values of both set and packedset types.

```
TYPE
    CharSet = SET OF CHAR;
    ByteSet = PACKEDSET OF [-127..128];

VAR
    letters, digits, alphanum: CharSet;
    neg, pos, zero : ByteSet;
    . . .
```

---

<sup>2</sup>Packedset types are innovated in the Standard.



```

letters  := CharSet{'a'..'z','A'..'Z'};
digits   := CharSet{'0'..'9'};
alphanum := letters + digits;

neg := ByteSet{-127..-1}; pos := ByteSet{1..127};
zero := ByteSet{-127..128}-neg-pos;

```

### 7.2.4 Strings

For operands of the string literal type, the string concatenation operation is defined, denoted by the symbol "+". **Note:** a character number literal (e.g. 15C) denotes a value of a literal string type of length 1. The empty string is compatible with the type CHAR and has a value equal to the string terminator (0C).

```

CONST
  CR = 15C;
  LF = 12C;
  LineEnd = CR + LF;
  Greeting = "hello " + "world" + LineEnd;

```

The new standard function LENGTH can be used to obtain the length of a string value.

```
PROCEDURE LENGTH(s: ARRAY OF CHAR): CARDINAL;
```

### 7.2.5 Value constructors

A value constructor is an expression denoting a value of an array type, a record type, or a set type. In case of array constructors and record constructors a list of values, known as *structure components*, is specified to define the values of components of an array value or the fields of a record value. In case of a set constructor, a list of members is specified, whose elements define the elements of the set value.

```

ValueConstructor = ArrayValue
                  | RecordValue
                  | SetValue.
ArrayValue = TypeIdentifier "{ "
            ArrayComponent { ", " ArrayComponent }

```

```

        "}" .
ArrayComponent = Component [ BY RepeatCount ].
Component      = Expression.
RepeatCount    = ConstExpression.
RecordValue    = TypeIdentifier "{"
                  Component { ", " Component }
                  "}" .

```

Set constructors are described in PIM.

The total number of components of an array constructor must be exactly the same as the number of array's elements (taking into account repetition factors). Each component must be assignment compatible with the array base type.

The number of components of a record constructor must be exactly the same as the number of fields. Each component must be an assignment compatible with the type of the field.

A special case is a record constructor for a record with variant parts. If the  $n$ -th field is the tag field the  $n$ -th component must be a constant expression. If there is no ELSE variant part associated with the tag field, then the variant associated with the value of expression should exist. If no variant is associated with the value, then the fields of the ELSE variant part should be included in the sequence of components.

The constructor's components may themselves contain lists of elements, and such nested constructs need not specify a type identifier. This relaxation is necessary for multi-dimensional arrays, where the types of the inner components may be anonymous.

### Examples

```

TYPE
  String = ARRAY [0..15] OF CHAR;
  Person = RECORD
    name: String;
    age  : CARDINAL;
  END;
  Vector = ARRAY [0..2] OF INTEGER;
  Matrix = ARRAY [0..2] OF Vector;

VAR

```

```

    string: String;
    person: Person;
    vector: Vector;
    matrix: Matrix;
    . . .
BEGIN
    . . .
    string:=String{" " BY 16};
    person:=Person{"Alex",32};
    vector:=Vector{1,2,3};
    matrix:=Matrix{vector,{4,5,6},Vector{7,8,9}};
    matrix:=Matrix{vector BY 3};

```

### 7.2.6 Multi-dimensional open arrays

According to the International Standard, parameters of a multi-dimensional open array type are allowed:

```

PROCEDURE Foo(VAR matrix: ARRAY OF ARRAY OF REAL);
    VAR i,j: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
    FOR i:=0 TO HIGH(matrix) DO
        FOR j:=0 TO HIGH(matrix[i]) DO
            ... matrix[i,j] ...
        END;
    END;
END Foo;

VAR a: ARRAY [0..2],[0..2] OF REAL;

BEGIN
    Foo(a);
END ...

```

### 7.2.7 Procedure type declarations

A procedure type identifier may be used in declaration of the type itself. This feature is used in the Standard Library. See, for example, modules `ConvTypes` and `WholeConv`.

```

TYPE
  Scan = PROCEDURE (CHAR; VAR Scan);
  Func = PROCEDURE (INTEGER): Func;

```

## 7.2.8 Procedure constants

A constant expression may contain values of procedure types, or structured values whose components are values of procedure types. Procedure constants may be used as a mechanism for procedure renaming. In a definition module it is possible to export a renamed version of the imported procedure.

### Examples

```

TYPE ProcTable = ARRAY [0..3] OF PROC;

CONST
  WS = STextIO.WriteString;
  Table = ProcTable{Up,Down,Left,Right};

```

## 7.2.9 Whole number division

Along with DIV and MOD the International Standard includes two additional operators for whole number division: ‘/’ and REM.

Operators DIV and MOD are defined for positive divisors only, while ‘/’ and REM can be used for both negative and positive divisors.

The language exception `wholeDivException` (See [7.2.13](#)) is raised if:

- the second operand is zero (for all four operators)
- the second operand of DIV or MOD is negative.

For the given `lval` and `rval`

```

quotient := lval / rval;
remainder := lval REM rval;

```

the following is true (for all non-zero values of `rval`):

- `lval = rval * quotient + remainder`

- the value of `remainder` is either zero, or an integer of the same sign as `lval` and of a smaller absolute value than `rval`.

For the given `lval` and `rval`

```
quotient := lval DIV rval;
modulus  := lval MOD rval;
```

the following is true (for all positive values of `rval`):

- `lval = rval * quotient + modulus`
- the value of `modulus` is a non-negative integer less than `rval`.

Operations are exemplified in the following table:

<i>op</i>	31 <i>op</i> 10	31 <i>op</i> (-10)	(-31) <i>op</i> 10	(-31) <i>op</i> (-10)
/	3	-3	-3	3
REM	1	1	-1	-1
DIV	3	exception	-4	exception
MOD	1	exception	9	exception

### 7.2.10 Type conversions

The language includes the following type conversion functions: `CHR`, `FLOAT`, `INT`, `LFLOAT`, `ORD`, `TRUNC` and `VAL`. The functions `INT` and `LFLOAT` are not described in PIM.

All the type conversion functions (except `VAL`) have a single parameter and can be expressed in terms of the `VAL` function.

Function	Parameter	Equals to
<code>CHR ( x )</code>	whole	<code>VAL ( CHAR , x )</code>
<code>FLOAT ( x )</code>	real or whole	<code>VAL ( REAL , x )</code>
<code>INT ( x )</code>	real or ordinal	<code>VAL ( INTEGER , x )</code>
<code>LFLOAT ( x )</code>	real or whole	<code>VAL ( LONGREAL , x )</code>
<code>ORD ( x )</code>	ordinal	<code>VAL ( CARDINAL , x )</code>
<code>TRUNC ( x )</code>	real	<code>VAL ( CARDINAL , x )</code>

The function `VAL` can be used to obtain a value of the specified scalar type from an expression of a scalar type. The function has two parameters. The first parameter should be a type parameter that denotes a scalar type. If the type is a subrange

type, the result of VAL has the host type of the subrange type, otherwise it has the type denoted by the type parameter.

The second parameter should be an expression of a scalar type and at least one of the restriction shall hold:

- the result type and the type of the expression are identical
- both the result type and the type of the expression are whole or real
- the result type or the type of the expression is a whole type

In the following table,  $\checkmark$  denotes a valid combination of types and  $\times$  denotes an invalid combination:

the type of expression	the type denoted by the type parameter				
	whole	real	CHAR	BOOLEAN	enumeration
whole type	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$
real type	$\checkmark$	$\checkmark$	$\times$	$\times$	$\times$
CHAR	$\checkmark$	$\times$	$\checkmark$	$\times$	$\times$
BOOLEAN	$\checkmark$	$\times$	$\times$	$\checkmark$	$\times$
enumeration	$\checkmark$	$\times$	$\times$	$\times$	$\checkmark$

An exception is raised if the value of  $x$  is outside the range of the type  $T$  in the call  $\text{VAL}(T, x)$ . If  $x$  is of a real type, the calls  $\text{VAL}(\text{INTEGER}, x)$  and  $\text{VAL}(\text{CARDINAL}, x)$  both truncate the value of  $x$ .

### 7.2.11 NEW and DISPOSE

The standard procedures NEW and DISPOSE are back in the language. Calls of NEW and DISPOSE are substituted by calls of ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE which should be visible at the current scope. The compiler checks compatibility of these substitution procedures with the expected formal type:

```
PROCEDURE ALLOCATE(VAR a: ADDRESS; size: CARDINAL);
PROCEDURE DEALLOCATE(VAR a: ADDRESS; size: CARDINAL);
```

As a rule, the procedures ALLOCATE and DEALLOCATE declared in the module Storage are used. These procedures are made visible by including the import list:

```
FROM Storage IMPORT ALLOCATE, DEALLOCATE;
```

When language extensions are enabled, the procedures `NEW` and `DISPOSE` can be applied to dynamic arrays. See [7.6.12](#) for further details.

See also the **STORAGE** option.

### 7.2.12 Finalization

A special mechanism called *finalization* is provided to perform certain operations during program termination.

A module declaration contains an optional finalization body, which is executed during program termination for static modules (See [7.2.16](#)) or dynamic module finalization.

```
ModuleBody = [ BEGIN BlockBody
                [ FINALLY BlockBody ] ] END
BlockBody  = NormalPart
            [ EXCEPT ExceptionalPart ].
NormalPart = StatementSequence.
ExceptionalPart = StatementSequence.
```

**Note:** the `RETURN` statement can be used in a `BlockBody`.

Consider the following example:

```
MODULE Test;

. . .

VAR cid: StreamFile.ChanId;

BEGIN
    StreamFile.Open(cid,"tmp",flags,res);
    Process(cid);
  FINALLY
    StreamFile.Close(cid);
  END Test
```

If the `Test` module is declared in a procedure block, then the initialization body will be executed on a call of the procedure, while the finalization body is executed upon return from the procedure.

If the `Test` module is a static module, its finalization will be executed during program termination.

In any case, finalization bodies are executed in reverse order with respect to their initializations.

In the following example, finalization of a local module is used to restore context:

```
VAR state: State;

PROCEDURE Foo;

    MODULE AutoSave;
        IMPORT state, State;
        VAR save: State;
    BEGIN
        save:=state; (* save state *)
        state:=fooState;
    FINALLY
        state:=save; (* restore state *)
    END AutoSave;

BEGIN
    ... process ...
END Foo;
```

The initialization part of the `AutoSave` module will be executed before any statement in the `Foo` body and finalization part will be executed directly before returning from a call of `Foo`.

### 7.2.13 Exceptions

An exception handling mechanism is now included in the language. Both user-defined exceptions and language exceptions can be handled. There is no special exception type; an exception is identified by a pair: exception source value and cardinal value. Two keywords (`EXCEPT` and `RETRY`) are added to the language. The essential part of exception handling is provided in two system modules: `EXCEPTIONS` and `M2EXCEPTION`.

The `EXCEPTIONS` module provides facilities for raising and identifying the user-defined exceptions, for reporting their occurrence, and for making enquiries concerning the execution state of the current coroutine.



The M2EXCEPTION module provides facilities for identifying language exceptions that have been raised.

A procedure body, an initialization or finalization part of a module body may contain an exceptional part.

```
BlockBody  = NormalPart [ EXCEPT ExceptionalPart ].
NormalPart = StatementSequence.
ExceptionalPart = StatementSequence.
```

Example:

```
PROCEDURE Div(a,b: INTEGER): INTEGER;
BEGIN
    RETURN a DIV b          (* try to divide *)
EXCEPT
    RETURN MAX(INTEGER) (* if exception *)
END Fly;
```

When an exception is raised (explicitly or implicitly) the 'nearest' (in terms of procedure calls) exceptional part in the current coroutine receives control. Each coroutine is executed initially in the normal state. If an exception is raised, the coroutine state switches to the exceptional state. If there is no exceptional part, raising of an exception is a termination event (See [7.2.16](#)).

A procedure with an exceptional part is executed in the normal state. The state is restored after block execution. A procedure without an exceptional part is executed in the state of the caller.

If an exception is raised in the state of exceptional execution it is re-raised in the calling context. In this case finalization of local modules and restoring protection (See [7.2.18](#)) will not take place.

An additional statement (RETRY) can be used in the exceptional part. Execution of the RETRY statement causes the normal part to be re-executed in the normal state.

Execution of the RETURN statement in the exceptional part causes switch to the normal state.

If neither RETURN nor RETRY was executed in the exceptional part, the exceptional completion will occur. In this case after finalization of local modules (if any) and restoring protection state (if necessary), the exception will be re-raised.

**Example**

```

PROCEDURE Foo;
BEGIN
    TryFoo(...);
EXCEPT
    IF CanBeRepaired() THEN
        Repair;
        RETRY; (* re-execute the normal part *)
    ELSIF CanBeProcessed() THEN
        Process;
        RETURN; (* exception is handled *)
    ELSE
        (* exception will be automatically re-raised *)
    END;
END Foo;

```

**7.2.14 The system module EXCEPTIONS**

The module `EXCEPTIONS` provides facilities for raising user's exceptions and for making enquiries concerning the current execution state.

User-defined exceptions are identified uniquely by a pair (exception source, number). When the source of a user-defined exception is a separate module, it prevents the defined exceptions of the module from being raised directly by other sources. See e.g. the module `Storage`.

```
TYPE ExceptionSource;
```

Values of the opaque type `ExceptionSource` are used to identify the source of exceptions raised; they should be allocated before usage.

```
TYPE ExceptionNumber = CARDINAL;
```

Values of the type `ExceptionNumber` are used to distinguish between different exceptions of one source.

```
PROCEDURE AllocateSource(VAR newSource: ExceptionSource);
```

The procedure allocates an unique value of the type `ExceptionSource`. The procedure is normally called during initialization of a module, and the resulting value is then used in all calls of `RAISE`. If an unique value cannot be allocated the language exception `exException` is raised (See [7.2.15](#)).

```
PROCEDURE RAISE(source: ExceptionSource;  
               number: ExceptionNumber;  
               message: ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

A call to RAISE associates the given values of exception source, number, and message with the current context and raises an exception.

The function CurrentNumber can be used to obtain the exception number for the current exception.

```
PROCEDURE CurrentNumber  
  (source: ExceptionSource): ExceptionNumber;
```

If the calling coroutine is in the exceptional execution state because of raising an exception from source, the procedure returns the corresponding number, and otherwise raises an exception.

The procedure GetMessage can be used to obtain the message passed when an exception was raised. This may give further information about the nature of the exception.

```
PROCEDURE GetMessage(VAR text: ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

If the calling coroutine is in the exceptional execution state, the procedure returns the (possibly truncated) string associated with the current context. Otherwise, in the normal execution state, it returns the empty string.

```
PROCEDURE IsCurrentSource  
  (source: ExceptionSource): BOOLEAN;
```

If the current coroutine is in the exceptional execution state because of raising an exception from source, the procedure returns TRUE, and FALSE otherwise.

```
PROCEDURE IsExceptionalExecution (): BOOLEAN;
```

If the current coroutine is in the exceptional execution state because of raising an exception, the procedure returns TRUE, and FALSE otherwise.

The following example illustrates the recommended form of a library module and usage of procedures from EXCEPTIONS.

```
DEFINITION MODULE FooLib;  
  
PROCEDURE Foo;
```

```

(* Raises Foo exception if necessary *)

PROCEDURE IsFooException(): BOOLEAN;
(* Returns TRUE, if the calling coroutine is in
   exceptional state because of the raising of
   an exception from Foo, and otherwise returns FALSE.
  *)

END FooLib.

IMPLEMENTATION MODULE FooLib;

IMPORT EXCEPTIONS;

VAR source: EXCEPTIONS.ExceptionSource;

PROCEDURE Foo;
BEGIN
  TryFoo(...);
  IF NOT done THEN
    EXCEPTIONS.RAISE(source,0,"Foo exception");
  END;
END Foo;

PROCEDURE IsFooException(): BOOLEAN;
BEGIN
  RETURN EXCEPTIONS.IsCurrentSource(source)
END IsLibException;

BEGIN
  EXCEPTIONS.AllocateSource(source)
END FooLib.

```

If we want to distinguish the exceptions raised in the `FooLib` we will append an enumeration type and an additional enquiry procedure in the `FooLib` definition:

```

TYPE FooExceptions = (fault, problem);

PROCEDURE FooException(): FooExceptions;

```

The `FooException` procedure can be implemented as follows:

```
PROCEDURE FooException(): FooExceptions;  
BEGIN  
    RETURN VAL(FooExceptions,  
               EXCEPTIONS.CurrentNumber(source))  
END FooException;
```

The Client module illustrates the usage of the library module FooLib:

```
MODULE Client;  
  
IMPORT  FooLib, EXCEPTIONS, STextIO;  
  
PROCEDURE ReportException;  
    VAR s: ARRAY [0..63] OF CHAR;  
BEGIN  
    EXCEPTIONS.GetMessage(s);  
    STextIO.WriteString(s);  
    STextIO.WriteLine;  
END ReportException;  
  
PROCEDURE TryFoo;  
BEGIN  
    FooLib.Foo;  
EXCEPT  
    IF FooLib.IsFooException() THEN  
        ReportException;  
        RETURN; (* exception is handled *)  
    ELSE  
        (* Exception will be re-raised *)  
    END  
END TryFoo;  
  
END Client.
```

### 7.2.15 The system module M2EXCEPTION

The system module M2EXCEPTION provides language exceptions identification facilities. The language (which includes the system modules) is regarded as one source of exceptions.

The module exports the enumeration type `M2Exceptions`, used to distinguish language exceptions, and two enquiry functions.

```

TYPE
  M2Exceptions =
    (indexException,      rangeException,
     caseSelectException, invalidLocation,
     functionException,   wholeValueException,
     wholeDivException,   realValueException,
     realDivException,    complexValueException,
     complexDivException, protException,
     sysException,        coException,
     exException
    );

```

```
PROCEDURE IsM2Exception(): BOOLEAN;
```

If the current coroutine is in the exceptional execution state because of the raising of a language exception, the procedure returns `TRUE`, and `FALSE` otherwise.

```
PROCEDURE M2Exception(): M2Exceptions;
```

If the current coroutine is in the exceptional execution state because of the raising of a language exception, the procedure returns the corresponding enumeration value, and otherwise raises an exception.

The following description lists all language exceptions (in alphabetical order) along with the circumstances under which they are detected. **Note:** Compiler options can be used to control detection of some exceptions (See Chapter 5). Detection of some exceptions is not required by the Standard, however such exceptions can be detected on some platforms (See Chapter A).

### **caseSelectException**

Case selector is out of range and the `ELSE` clause does not exist.

### **coException**

The system module **COROUTINES** (see 7.2.17) exceptions:

- `RETURN` from a coroutine other than the main coroutine
- size of the supplied workspace is smaller than the minimum required (See description of the procedure `NEWCOROUTINE`)
- the caller is not attached to the source of interrupts (See description of the procedure `HANDLER`)

- coroutine workspace overflow

**complexDivException**

Divide by zero in a complex number expression.

**complexValueException**

Overflow in evaluation of a complex number expression.

**exException**

A system module **EXCEPTIONS** or **M2EXCEPTION** exception:

- exception identity is enquired in the normal execution state (See `CurrentNumber`)
- exception identity enquiry to a wrong source (See `CurrentNumber`)
- no further exception source values can be allocated (See `AllocateSource`)

**functionException**

No RETURN statement before the end of a function.

**indexException**

Array index out of range. See options **CHECKINDEX** and **CHECKINDEX**.

**invalidLocation**

Attempt to dereference NIL or an uninitialized pointer. See the option **CHECKNIL**.

**protException**

The given protection is less restrictive than the current protection.

**rangeException**

Range exception (See the **CHECKRANGE** option):

- assignment value is out of range of the target's type
- structure component value is out of range
- expression cannot be converted to the new type
- value to be included/excluded is not of the base type of the set (See also the **CHECKSET** option)

- return value is out of range
- set value is out of range (See also the **CHECKSET** option)
- tag value is out of range (in a variant record).

**realDivException**

Divide by zero in a real number expression.

**realValueException**

Overflow in evaluation of a real number expression.

**sysException**

The system module **SYSTEM** exceptions. **Note:** All these exceptions are non-mandatory.

- invalid use of ADDADR, SUBADR or DIFADR
- the result of MAKEADR is out of the address range
- alignment problem with CAST
- the result of CAST is not a valid representation for the target type

**wholeDivException**

Whole division exception:

- divided by zero in evaluation of a whole number expression
- the second operand of DIV or MOD is negative (See the **CHECKDIV** option)

**wholeValueException**

Overflow in evaluation of a whole number expression.

**An example of language exception handling**

```

PROCEDURE Div(a,b: INTEGER): INTEGER;
BEGIN
  RETURN a DIV b
EXCEPT
  IF IsM2Exception() THEN
    IF M2Exception() = wholeDivException THEN
      IF a < 0 THEN RETURN MIN(INTEGER)
      ELSE          RETURN MAX(INTEGER)

```



```
        END ;  
    END ;  
END ;  
END Div ;
```

### 7.2.16 Termination

During the program termination, finalizations of those static modules that have started initialization are executed in reverse order with respect to their initializations (See also [7.2.12](#)). The static modules are the program module, the implementation modules, and any local modules declared in the module blocks of these modules.

Program termination starts from the first occurrence of the following event:

1. end of the program module body is reached
2. a RETURN statement is executed in the program module body
3. the standard procedure HALT is called
4. an exception was raised and is not handled

The system module TERMINATION provides facilities for enquiries concerning the occurrence of termination events.

```
PROCEDURE IsTerminating() : BOOLEAN;
```

Returns TRUE if any coroutine has initiated program termination and FALSE otherwise.

```
PROCEDURE HasHalted() : BOOLEAN;
```

Returns TRUE if a call of HALT has been made and FALSE otherwise.

### 7.2.17 Coroutines

The system module COROUTINES provides facilities for coroutines creation, explicit control transfer between coroutines, and interrupts handling. **Note:** Some features can be unavailable in the current release. See [Chapter A](#) for details.

Values of the type COROUTINE are created dynamically by a call of NEWCOROUTINE and identify the coroutine in subsequent operations. A par-

ticular coroutine is identified by the same value of the coroutine type throughout the lifetime of that coroutine.

```
TYPE COROUTINE ;
```

The correspondent type was called `PROCESS` in PIM. From the third edition of PIM, the `ADDRESS` type was used to identify a coroutine.

```
PROCEDURE NEWCOROUTINE(
    procBody: PROC;
    workspace: SYSTEM.ADDRESS;
    size: CARDINAL;
    VAR cr: COROUTINE
    [; initProtection: PROTECTION]);
```

Creates a new coroutine whose body is given by `procBody`, and returns the identity of the coroutine in `cr`. `workspace` is a pointer to the work space allocated to the coroutine; `size` specifies the size of that workspace in terms of `SYSTEM.LOC`. `initProtection` is an optional parameter that specifies the initial protection level of the coroutine.

An exception is raised (See `coException`) if the value of `size` is less than the minimum workspace size.

If the optional parameter is omitted, the initial protection of the coroutine is given by the current protection of the caller.

The created coroutine is initialized in such a way that when control is first transferred to that coroutine, the procedure given by `procBody` is called in a normal state. The exception (`coException`) is raised when the `procBody` procedure attempts to return to its caller. Since the caller has no exception handler, raising this exception is a termination event.

The procedure `TRANSFER` can be used to transfer control from one coroutine to another.

```
PROCEDURE TRANSFER (VAR from: COROUTINE; to: COROUTINE);
```

Returns the identity of the calling coroutine in `from` and transfers control to the coroutine specified by `to`.

```
PROCEDURE CURRENT ( ): COROUTINE;
```

Returns the identity of the calling coroutine.

**Interrupt handling**

The `INTERRUPTSOURCE` type is used to identify interrupts.

```
TYPE INTERRUPTSOURCE = INTEGER;
```

Programs that use the interrupt handling facilities may be non-portable since the type is implementation-defined.

```
PROCEDURE ATTACH(source: INTERRUPTSOURCE);
```

Associates the specified source of interrupts with the calling coroutine. More than one source of interrupts may be associated with a single coroutine.

```
PROCEDURE DETACH(source: INTERRUPTSOURCE);
```

Dissociates the specified source of interrupts from the calling coroutine. The call has no effect if the coroutine is not associated with source.

```
PROCEDURE ISATTACHED(source: INTERRUPTSOURCE): BOOLEAN;
```

Returns `TRUE` if and only if the specified source of interrupts is currently associated with a coroutine; otherwise returns `FALSE`.

```
PROCEDURE HANDLER(source: INTERRUPTSOURCE): COROUTINE;
```

Returns the coroutine, if any, that is associated with the source of interrupts. The result is undefined if there is no coroutine associated with the source.

```
PROCEDURE IOTRANSFER(VAR from: COROUTINE;
                     to: COROUTINE);
```

Returns the identity of the calling coroutine in `from` and transfers control to the coroutine specified by `to`. On occurrence of an interrupt, associated with the caller, control is transferred back to the caller, and `from` returns the identity of the interrupted coroutine. An exception is raised if the calling coroutine is not associated with a source of interrupts.

**Protection**

See section [7.2.18](#) for information about the type `PROTECTION`.

```
PROCEDURE LISTEN(prot: PROTECTION);
```

Momentarily changes protection of the calling coroutine to `prot`, usually lowering it so as to allow an interrupt request to be granted.

```
PROCEDURE PROT(): PROTECTION;
```

Returns protection of the calling coroutine.

### 7.2.18 Protection

A program module, implementation module or local module may specify, by including protection in its heading, that execution of the enclosed statement sequence is protected.

```
ModuleHeading = MODULE ident [ Protection ] ";" .
Protection    = [ ConstExpression ] .
```

A module with protection in its heading is called a directly protected module. A directly protected procedure is an exported procedure declared in a protected module.

Protection of a module is provided by surrounding the externally accessible procedures and module body by calls of access control procedures. The value of the protection expression is passed to the call of access control procedures as an actual parameter.

The protection expression should be of the PROTECTION type. The PROTECTION type is an elementary type with at least two values: INTERRUPTIBLE and UNINTERRUPTIBLE.

Operators  $<$ ,  $>$ ,  $\leq$  and  $\geq$  can be used to compare values of the PROTECTION type. If  $x$  is a value of PROTECTION type, then  $x$  satisfies the conditions:

$$\text{UNINTERRUPTIBLE} \leq x \leq \text{INTERRUPTIBLE}$$

## 7.3 Standard procedures

This section briefly describes the set of standard procedures and functions. Some of them are not defined in the International Standard and are available only if the option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set. The procedure HALT (see 7.6.13) may have an additional parameter, if the extensions are enabled .

In the tables (7.4 and 7.5) of predefined procedures,  $v$  stands for a designator,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $n$  — for expressions,  $T$  — for a type. Non-standard procedures are marked with  $\surd$ .

The procedure COPY and the functions ASH, ENTIER and LEN are described in *The Oberon-2 Report*.

Procedure	Meaning
✓ ASSERT( $x[ , n ]$ )	Terminates the program if $x \neq \text{TRUE}$ (See <a href="#">7.6.14</a> )
✓ COPY( $x, v$ )	Copies a string: $v := x$
DEC( $v[ , n ]$ )	$v := v - n$ , default $n=1$
DISPOSE( $v$ )	Deallocates $v^{\wedge}$ (See <a href="#">7.2.11</a> )
EXCL( $v, n$ )	$v := v - \{n\}$
HALT	Terminates program execution (See <a href="#">7.6.13</a> )
INC( $v[ , n ]$ )	$v := v + n$ , default $n=1$
INCL( $v, n$ )	$v := v + \{n\}$
NEW( $v$ )	Allocates $v^{\wedge}$ (See <a href="#">7.2.11</a> )
✓ NEW( $v, x_0 \dots x_n$ )	Allocates $v^{\wedge}$ of length $x_0 \dots x_n$ (See <a href="#">7.6.12</a> )

Table 7.4: Modula-2 proper procedures

## 7.4 Compatibility

This section describes compatibility between entities of different types. There are three forms of compatibility:

- expression compatibility (specifying the types that may be combined in expressions);
- assignment compatibility (specifying the type of a value that may be assigned to a variable);
- parameter compatibility (specifying the type of an actual parameter that may be passed to a formal parameter).

The rules for parameter compatibility are relaxed in the case where a formal parameter is of a system storage type. This variation is known as the system parameter compatibility.

In most cases the compatibility rules are the same as described in PIM. However, we suppose to explicitly list all the rules.

### 7.4.1 Expression compatibility

Two expressions  $a$  and  $b$  of types  $T_a$  and  $T_b$  are *expression compatible* if any of the following statement is true:

	Function	Meaning
	ABS ( $x$ )	Absolute value of $x$
✓	ASH ( $x, n$ )	Arithmetic shift
	CAP ( $x$ )	Corresponding capital letter
	CHR ( $x$ )	Character with the ordinal number $x$
	CMPLX ( $x, y$ )	Complex number with real part $x$ and imaginary part $y$
✓	ENTIER ( $x$ )	Largest integer not greater than $x$
	FLOAT ( $x$ )	VAL ( REAL , $x$ )
	HIGH ( $v$ )	High bound of the index of $v$
	IM ( $x$ )	Imaginary part of a complex $x$
	INT ( $x$ )	VAL ( INTEGER , $x$ )
✓	LEN ( $v[ , n]$ )	Length of an array in the dimension $n$ (default=0)
	LENGTH ( $x$ )	String length
	LFLOAT ( $x$ )	VAL ( LONGREAL , $x$ )
	MAX ( $T$ )	Maximum value of type $T$
	MIN ( $T$ )	Minimum value of type $T$
	ODD ( $x$ )	$x \text{ MOD } 2 = 1$
	ORD ( $x$ )	VAL ( CARDINAL , $x$ )
	RE ( $x$ )	Real part of a complex $x$
	SIZE ( $T$ )	The number of storage units, required by a variable of type $T$
	TRUNC ( $x$ )	Truncation to the integral part
	VAL ( $T, x$ )	Type conversion

Table 7.5: Modula-2 function procedures

- a. The types  $T_a$  and  $T_b$  are identical. **Note:** If a type is a subrange type, then only its host type matters, therefore values of subranges of the same host type are expression compatible with each other and with the host type.
- b. A type of one expression is a complex type, and the other expression is a complex constant.
- c. A type of one expression is a real type, and the other expression is a real constant.
- d. A type of one expression is a whole type, and the other expression is a whole constant.

- e. A type of one expression is character, and the other expression is a string literal of length 0 or 1. See also 7.2.4.

```

VAR
    char: CHAR;
    ...
    WHILE (char # ' ') & (char # ".") DO
    ...

```

### 7.4.2 Assignment compatibility

An expression  $e$  of type  $T_e$  is *assignment compatible* with the variable  $v$  of type  $T_v$  if one of the following conditions holds<sup>3</sup>:

- a.  $T_v$  is identical to the type  $T_e$ , and the type is not an open array type.
- b.  $T_v$  is a subrange of the type  $T_e$ .
- c.  $T_v$  is the CARDINAL type or a subrange of the CARDINAL type and  $T_e$  is the INTEGER type or  $e$  is a whole constant.
- d.  $T_v$  is the INTEGER type or a subrange of the INTEGER type and  $T_e$  is the CARDINAL type or  $e$  is a whole constant.
- e.  $T_v$  is a real type and  $e$  is a real constant.
- f.  $T_v$  is a complex type and  $e$  is a complex constant.
- g.  $T_v$  is a pointer type and  $e$  is NIL.
- h.  $T_v$  is a procedure type and  $e$  is the designator of a procedure which has the same structure as the procedure type  $T_v$  and which has been declared at level 0.
- i.  $T_v$  is the character type or a subrange of the character type and  $e$  is a string literal of length 0 or 1.
- j.  $T_v$  is an array type having the character type as its component type, and  $e$  is a string literal of length less than or equal to the number of components in arrays of type  $T_v$ <sup>4</sup>.

---

<sup>3</sup> For an expression of a subrange type only host type matters.

<sup>4</sup> A string literal is not assignment compatible with an array whose component's type is a subrange of the character type.

- k.  $T_v$  is the address type and  $T_e$  is a pointer type or  $T_e$  is the address type and  $T_v$  is a pointer type.

### 7.4.3 Value parameter compatibility

A formal type is *value parameter compatible* with an actual expression if any of the following statements is true:

- a. The formal type is constructed from a system storage type and is system parameter compatible with the expression.
- b. The formal parameter is an open array, the actual parameter is an array type and the component type of the formal type is value parameter compatible with the component type of the actual type <sup>5</sup>.
- c. The formal type is assignment compatible with the actual parameter.

### 7.4.4 Variable parameter compatibility

A formal type is *variable parameter compatible* with an actual variable if any of the following statements is true:

- a. The formal type is constructed from a system storage type and is system parameter compatible with the expression.
- b. The formal parameter is an open array, the actual parameter is an array type and the component's type of the formal type is variable parameter compatible with the component's type of the actual parameter type.
- c. The formal type is identical to the actual parameter type.

### 7.4.5 System parameter compatibility

A formal type is *system parameter compatible* with an actual parameter if any of the following statements is true:

- a. The formal parameter is of the SYSTEM.LOC type and the actual parameter is of any type  $T$  such that  $\text{SIZE}(T)$  is equal to 1.

---

<sup>5</sup>A formal array parameter with the component's type  $T$  is not parameter compatible with the actual parameter of type  $T$ .



- b. The formal parameter is of the type

```
ARRAY [ 0 .. n-1 ] OF SYSTEM.LOC
```

and the actual parameter is of any type  $T$  such that  $\text{SIZE}(T)$  is equal to  $n$ .

- c. The formal parameter is of the open array type

```
ARRAY OF SYSTEM.LOC
```

and the actual parameter is of any type but not numeric literal.

- d. The formal parameter is of the multi-dimensional open array type

```
ARRAY OF ARRAY [ 0 .. n-1 ] OF SYSTEM.LOC
```

and the actual parameter is of any type  $T$  such that  $\text{SIZE}(T)$  is a multiple of  $n$ .

## 7.5 The Modula-2 module **SYSTEM**

The module **SYSTEM** provides the low-level facilities for gaining an access to the address and underlying storage of variables, performing address arithmetic operations and manipulating the representation of values. Program that use these facilities may be non-portable.

This module does not exist in the same sense as other libraries but is hard-coded into the compiler itself. To use the facilities provided, however, identifiers must be imported in a usual way.

Some of the **SYSTEM** module procedures are generic procedures that cannot be explicitly declared, i.e. they apply to classes of operand types or have several possible forms of a parameter list.

The **SYSTEM** module is the only module specified in the International Standard that can be extended in the implementation. The XDS **SYSTEM** module provides additional types and procedures.

**Note:** The module **SYSTEM** is different in Oberon-2. See [8.6](#) for details.

```
DEFINITION MODULE SYSTEM;
```

```
CONST
```

```
  BITS PER LOC    = 8;
```

```
  LOC SPER WORD   = 4;
```

```
  LOC SPER BYTE   = 1;
```

```

TYPE
    LOC;
    ADDRESS = POINTER TO LOC;
    WORD = ARRAY [0 .. LOCSPERWORD-1] OF LOC;
    BYTE = LOC;

PROCEDURE ADDADR(addr: ADDRESS; offset: CARDINAL): ADDRESS;
PROCEDURE SUBADR(addr: ADDRESS; offset: CARDINAL): ADDRESS;
PROCEDURE DIFADR(addr1, addr2: ADDRESS): INTEGER;

PROCEDURE MAKEADR(val: <whole type>): ADDRESS;

PROCEDURE ADR(VAR v: <anytype>): ADDRESS;

PROCEDURE REF(VAR v: <anytype>): POINTER TO <type of the parameter>;

PROCEDURE ROTATE(val: <a packedset type>;
    num: INTEGER): <type of the first parameter>;

PROCEDURE SHIFT(val: <a packedset type>;
    num: INTEGER): <type of the first parameter>;

PROCEDURE CAST(<targettype>;
    val: <anytype>): <targettype>;

PROCEDURE TSIZE (<type>; ... ): CARDINAL;

( *----- *)
( * ----- non-standard features ----- *)

TYPE
    INT8    = <integer 8-bits type>;
    INT16   = <integer 16-bits type>;
    INT32   = <integer 32-bits type>;
    CARD8   = <cardinal 8-bits type>;
    CARD16  = <cardinal 16-bits type>;
    CARD32  = <cardinal 32-bits type>;
    BOOL8   = <boolean 8-bits type>;
    BOOL16  = <boolean 16-bits type>;
    BOOL32  = <boolean 32-bits type>;
    INDEX   = <type of index>
    DIFADR_TYPE = <type that DIFADR function returns>

```

```

TYPE (* for use in Oberon *)
  INT   = <Modula-2 INTEGER type>;
  CARD  = <Modula-2 CARDINAL type>;

TYPE (* for interfacing to C *)
  int      = <C int type>;
  unsigned = <C unsigned type>;
  size_t   = <C size_t type>;
  void     = <C void type>;

PROCEDURE MOVE(src, dest: ADDRESS; size: CARDINAL);
PROCEDURE FILL(adr : ADDRESS; val : BYTE; size : CARDINAL);

PROCEDURE GET(adr: ADDRESS; VAR var: SimpleType);
PROCEDURE PUT(adr: ADDRESS; var: SimpleType);

PROCEDURE CC(n: CARDINAL): BOOLEAN;

END SYSTEM.

```

### 7.5.1 System types

#### LOC

Values of the LOC type are the uninterpreted contents of the smallest addressable unit of a storage in implementation. The value of the call `TSIZE(LOC)` is therefore equal to one.

The type LOC was introduced as a mechanism to resolve the problems with BYTE and WORD types. Its introduction allows a consistent handling of both these types, and enables also WORD-like types to be further introduced, eg:

```
TYPE WORD16 = ARRAY [0..1] OF SYSTEM.LOC;
```

The only operation directly defined for the LOC type is an assignment. There are special rules affecting parameter compatibility for system storage types. See [7.4.5](#) for further details.

#### BYTE

BYTE is defined as LOC and has all the properties of the type LOC.

#### WORD

The type WORD is defined as

```
CONST LOCSPERWORD = 4;
TYPE WORD = ARRAY [0..LOCSPERWORD-1] OF LOC;
```

and the value of the call `TSIZE(WORD)` is equal to `LOCSPERWORD`.

The only operation directly defined for the `WORD` type is an assignment. There are special rules affecting parameter compatibility for system storage types. See 7.4.5 for further details.

## ADDRESS

The type `ADDRESS` is defined as

```
TYPE ADDRESS = POINTER TO LOC;
```

The `ADDRESS` type is an assignment compatible with all pointer types and vice versa (See 7.4.2). A formal variable parameter of the `ADDRESS` type is a parameter compatible with an actual parameter of any pointer type.

Variables of type `ADDRESS` are no longer expression compatible with `CARDINAL` (as it was in PIM) and they cannot directly occur in expressions that include arithmetic operators. Functions `ADDADR`, `SUBADR` and `DIFADR` were introduced for address arithmetic.

## Whole system types

Types `INT8`, `CARD8`, `INT16`, `CARD16`, `INT32`, `CARD32` are guaranteed to contain 8, 16, or 32 bits respectively.

These types are introduced to simplify constructing the interfaces for foreign libraries (See Chapter 10). Types `SHORTINT`, `LONGINT`, `SHORTCARD`, `LONGCARD` are synonyms of `INT8`, `INT32`, `CARD8`, `CARD32`, respectively (See also the **M2ADDTYPES** option). Types `INTEGER` and `CARDINAL` are synonyms of `INT16`/`INT32`, `CARD16`/`CARD32`, depending on the target platform. See also the **M2BASE16** option.

These types are not described in the International Standard.

## Boolean system types

Types `BOOL8`, `BOOL16`, and `BOOL32` are guaranteed to contain 8, 16 and 32 bits respectively. By default the compiler uses `BOOL8` type for `BOOLEAN`. In some cases (e.g. in the interface to the Windows API) `BOOL16` or `BOOL32` should be used instead.

These types are not described in the International Standard.

**Bitset system types**

Types SET8, SET16, and SET32 are guaranteed to contain 8,16 and 32 bits respectively. The predefined type BITSET is a synonym for SYSTEM.SET16 or SYSTEM.SET32, depending on the target platform. See also the **M2BASE16** option.

These types are not described in the International Standard.

**Modula-2 whole types**

Types INT and CARD are equal to Modula-2 INTEGER and CARDINAL types, respectively. These types can be used in Oberon-2 in order to use Modula-2 procedures in a portable way. See [10.1](#) for further details.

These types are not described in the International Standard.

**Interface to C**

Types int, unsigned, size\_t and void are introduced to simplify interfacing to C libraries. See [10.3](#) for further details.

**7.5.2 System functions**

```
PROCEDURE ADDADR(addr: ADDRESS;
                 offs: CARDINAL): ADDRESS;
```

Returns an address given by (addr + offs). The subsequent use of the calculated address may raise an exception.

```
PROCEDURE SUBADR(addr: ADDRESS;
                 offs: CARDINAL): ADDRESS;
```

Returns an address given by (addr - offs). The subsequent use of the calculated address may raise an exception.

The result of functions ADDADR and SUBADR is meaningful if addr points into some object and the calculated address points into the same object or points to the next byte after the object.

```
PROCEDURE DIFADR(addr1, addr2: ADDRESS): INTEGER;
```

Returns the difference between addresses (addr1 - addr2).

The result of this function is meaningful if addr1 and addr2 point into the same object or to the next byte after the object.

```
PROCEDURE MAKEADR(val: <whole type>): ADDRESS;
```

The function is used to construct a value of the ADDRESS type from the value of a whole type.

**Note:** The International Standard does not define the number and types of the parameters. Programs that use this procedure may be non-portable.

```
PROCEDURE ADR(VAR v: <any type>): ADDRESS;
```

Returns the address of the variable v.

```
PROCEDURE CAST(<type>; x: <any type>): <type>;
```

The function CAST can be used (as a type transfer function) to interpret a value of any type other than a numeric literal value as a value of another type<sup>6</sup>.

The value of the call CAST(Type, val) is an unchecked conversion of val to the type Type. If SIZE(val) = TSIZE(Type), the bit pattern representation of the result is the same as the bit pattern representation of val; otherwise the result and the value of val have the same bit pattern representation for a size equal to the smaller of the numbers of storage units.

The given implementation may forbid some combinations of parameter types.

**Note:** In Oberon-2 module SYSTEM, the respective procedure is called VAL.

```
PROCEDURE TSIZE(Type; ... ): CARDINAL;
```

Returns the number of storage units (LOCs) used to store the value of the specified type. The extra parameters, if present, are used to distinguish variants in a variant record and must be constant expressions<sup>7</sup>.

### Example

```
TYPE
  R = RECORD
    CASE i: INTEGER OF
      | 1: r: REAL;
      | 2: b: BOOLEAN;
    END;
  END;

... TSIZE(R, 1) ...
```

<sup>6</sup>The International Standard forbids the use of the PIM style type transfer, like CARDINAL(x).

<sup>7</sup>Those constant expressions are ignored in the current release.

The value of `TSIZE(T)` is equal to `SIZE(T)`.

### Packedset functions

Values of packedset types are represented as sequences of bits<sup>8</sup>. The bit number 0 is the least significant bit for a given platform. The following is true, where `v` is a variable of the type `CARDINAL`:

```
CAST(CARDINAL, BITSET{0}) = VAL(CARDINAL, 1)
SHIFT(CAST(BITSET, v), 1) = v * 2
SHIFT(CAST(BITSET, v), -1) = v DIV 2
```

**Note:** The functions `ROTATE` and `SHIFT` can be applied to a set with size less than or equal to the size of `BITSET`.

```
PROCEDURE ROTATE(x: T; n: integer): T;
```

Returns the value of `x` rotated `n` bits to the left (for positive `n`) or to the right (for negative `n`).

```
PROCEDURE SHIFT(x: T; n: integer): T;
```

Returns the value of `x` logically shifted `n` bits to the left (for positive `n`) or to the right (for negative `n`).

**Warning:** The result of `SHIFT(x, n)`, where `n` is greater than the number of elements in `T`, is undefined.

### Non-standard functions

```
PROCEDURE CC(n: whole constant): BOOLEAN;
```

Returns `TRUE` if the corresponding condition flag is set. The function is not implemented in the current release.

```
PROCEDURE REF(VAR v: <anytype>):
    POINTER TO <type of the parameter>;
```

Returns the pointer to the variable `v`. See also [10.4.2](#).

```
PROCEDURE BIT(adr: T; bit: INTEGER): BOOLEAN;
```

Returns bit `n` of `Mem[adr]`. `T` is either `ADDRESS` or whole type.

---

<sup>8</sup>The current implementation does not distinguish between set and packedset types.

### 7.5.3 System procedures

**Note:** all these procedures are non-standard.

```
PROCEDURE MOVE (src, dst: ADDRESS; size: CARDINAL);
```

Copies `size` bytes from the memory location specified by `src` to the memory location specified by `dst`.

**Warning:** No check for area overlap is performed. The behaviour of `SYSTEM.MOVE` in case of overlapping areas is undefined.

```
PROCEDURE FILL(adr : ADDRESS; val : BYTE; size : CARDINAL);
```

Fills the memory block of size `size` starting from the memory location specified by `adr` with the value of `val` using the `memset` C library function.

```
PROCEDURE GET (adr: ADDRESS; VAR v: SimpleType);
```

```
PROCEDURE PUT (adr: ADDRESS; x: SimpleType);
```

Gets/puts a value from/to address specified by `adr`. The second parameter cannot be of a record or array type.

```
VAR i: INTEGER;
```

```
GET (128, i);    (* get system cell value *)
i := i+20;      (* change it                *)
PUT (128, i);    (* and put back            *)
```

```
PROCEDURE CODE(...);
```

The `CODE` procedure accepts a sequence of strings as its parameter. This procedure inserts a string which is the concatenation of the parameters into the generated C code.

#### Example

```
PROCEDURE disable;      (* disable interrupts *)
BEGIN
  SYSTEM.CODE ("asm di;");
END disable;
```

will produce

```
asm di;
```



## 7.6 Language extensions

**Warning:** Using extensions may cause problems with software portability to other compilers.

In the standard mode the XDS Modula-2 compiler is ISO compliant (See 7.1). A set of language extensions may be enabled using the **M2EXTENSIONS** and **M2ADDTYPES** options.

The main purposes of supporting the language extensions are:

- to improve interfacing with other languages (See Chapter 10)
- to simplify migration from Modula-2 to Oberon-2
- to implement some useful features not found in ISO Modula-2
- to provide backward compatibility with previous releases

### 7.6.1 Lexical extensions

#### Comments

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

As well as ( \*\* ), there is another valid format for comments in the source texts. The portion of a line from “--” to the end is considered as a comment.

```
VAR i: INTEGER; -- this is a comment
--( *
  i:=0; (* this line will be compiled *)
--*)
```

#### Numeric constants

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

Both Modula-2 and Oberon-2 syntax rules for the numeric and character representations may be used.

```

Number      = [ "+" | "-" ] Integer | Real.
Integer     = digit { digit }
              | octalDigit { octalDigit } "B"
              | digit { hexDigit } "X".
Real        = digit { digit } "." { digit } [ ScaleFactor ].
ScaleFactor = ( "E" | "D" ) [ "+" | "-" ] digit {digit}.

Character   = ''' char ''' | ''' char '''
              | digit {hexDigit} "H"
              | octalDigit {octalDigit} "C".

```

### Examples

1991	1991 (decimal)
0DH	13 (decimal)
15B	13 (decimal)
41X	"A"
101C	"A"

**Note:** the symbol "D" in a ScaleFactor denotes a LONGREAL value.

## 7.6.2 Additional numeric types

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2ADDTYPES** is set.

The compiler option **M2ADDTYPES** introduces the following additional numeric types:

1. **SHORTINT** integers between  $-128$  and  $127$
2. **LONGINT** integers between  $-2^{31}$  and  $2^{31} - 1$
3. **SHORTCARD** unsigned integers between  $0$  and  $255$
4. **LONGCARD** unsigned integers between  $0$  and  $2^{32} - 1$

The following terms for groups of types will be used:

*Real types* for (REAL, LONGREAL)

*Integer types* for (SHORTINT, INTEGER, LONGINT)

*Cardinal types* for (SHORTCARD, CARDINAL, LONGCARD)

*Whole types* for integer and cardinal types

*Numeric types* for whole and real types

All integer types are implemented as subranges of internal compiler integer types. Therefore, according to the compatibility rules (See 7.4), the values of different integer types can be mixed in the expressions. The same holds for cardinal types. A mixture of integer and cardinal types is not allowed in expressions. As in Oberon-2, the numeric types form a hierarchy, and larger types include (i.e. can accept the values of) smaller types:

$$\text{LONGREAL} \subseteq \text{REAL} \subset \text{whole types}$$

Type compatibility in expressions is extended according to the following rules (See 7.4.1):

- The type of the result of an arithmetic or relation operation is the smallest type which includes the types of both operands.
- Before the operation, the values of both operands are converted to the result's type.

For instance, if the following variables are defined:

```
s: SHORTCARD;
c: CARDINAL;
i: INTEGER;
l: LONGINT;
r: REAL;
lr: LONGREAL;
```

then

Expression	Meaning	Result type
s + c	VAL(CARDINAL, s) + c	CARDINAL
l * i	l * VAL(LONGINT, i)	LONGINT
r + l	r + VAL-REAL, l)	REAL
r = s	r = VAL-REAL, s)	BOOLEAN
r + lr	VAL-LONGREAL, r) + lr	LONGREAL
c + i	not allowed	

The assignment compatibility rules are also extended (See 7.4.2), so an expression  $e$  of type  $T_e$  is assignment compatible with a variable  $v$  of type  $T_v$  if  $T_e$  and  $T_v$  are of numeric types and  $T_v$  includes  $T_e$ . Cardinal types and integer types are assignment compatible. The compiler generates the range checks whenever necessary.

**Examples (see declarations above):**

Statement	Comment
<code>i:=c;</code>	INTEGER and CARDINAL are assignment compatible
<code>i:=s;</code>	INTEGER and SHORTCARD are assignment compatible
<code>l:=i;</code>	LONGINT and INTEGER are subranges of the same host type
<code>r:=i;</code>	$\text{REAL} \subset \text{INTEGER}$
<code>r:=c;</code>	$\text{REAL} \subset \text{CARDINAL}$
<code>lr:=r;</code>	$\text{LONGREAL} \subseteq \text{REAL}$

### 7.6.3 Type casting

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

In ISO Modula-2, the second parameter of the `SYSTEM.CAST` procedure can not be a numeric literal. XDS provides numeric literal casting as an extension:

```
VAR
  c: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
  (* Ok if M2EXTENSIONS is ON *)
  c := SYSTEM.CAST(CARDINAL, -1);
```

### 7.6.4 Assignment compatibility with BYTE

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

An expression of type `CHAR`, `BOOLEAN`, `SHORTCARD`, `SHORTINT`, `SYSTEM.INT8`, or `SYSTEM.CARD8` can be assigned to a variable of type `BYTE` or passed as an actual parameters to a formal parameter of type `BYTE`.

### 7.6.5 Dynamic arrays

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

XDS allows Oberon-2 style dynamic arrays to be used according to the Oberon-2 rules.

An open array is an array type with no lower and upper bound specified, i.e. `ARRAY OF SomeType`. Open arrays may be used only in procedure parameter lists or as a pointer base type.

```
TYPE String = POINTER TO ARRAY OF CHAR;
```

Neither variables nor record fields may be of open array type.

If the designator type is formally an open array, then the only operations allowed with it are indexing and passing it to a procedure.

The extended versions of standard procedures `NEW` and `DISPOSE` can be used to create and delete the dynamic arrays (See [7.6.12](#)).

### Example

```
TYPE
  VECTOR = ARRAY OF REAL;
  (* 1-dim open array *)
  Vector = POINTER TO VECTOR;
  (* pointer to open array *)
  MATRIX = ARRAY OF VECTOR;
  (* 2-dim open array *)
  Matrix = POINTER TO MATRIX;
  (* pointer to this *)

VAR
  v: Vector;
  m: Matrix;

PROCEDURE ClearVector(VAR v: VECTOR);
  VAR i: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
  FOR i := 0 TO HIGH (v) DO v[i] := 0 END;
END ClearVector;

PROCEDURE ClearMatrix(VAR m: Matrix);
  VAR i: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
  FOR i := 0 TO HIGH (m) DO ClearVector(m[i]) END;
END ClearMatrix;

PROCEDURE Test;
```

```

BEGIN
  NEW(v, 10);
  NEW(m, 10, 20);
  ClearVector(v^);
  ClearMatrix(m^);
  v^[0] := 1;
  m^[1][1] := 2;
  m^[2,2] := 1000;
  DISPOSE(v);
  DISPOSE(m);
END Test;

```

### 7.6.6 Constant array constructors

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

XDS allows the declaration of constant arrays in the form

```
ARRAY OF QualIdent "{" ExprList "}"
```

QualIdent should refer to a basic type, range or enumeration type, and all expressions within ExprList should be of that type.

**Note:** structured types and non-constant expressions are not allowed.

The actual type of such a constant is `ARRAY [0..n] OF QualIdent`, where `n+1` is the number of expressions in ExprList.

```
CONST table = ARRAY OF INTEGER {1, 2+3, 3};
```

Constant arrays are subject to the same rules as all other constants, and may be read as a normal array.

In some cases constructors of this form are more convenient than ISO standard value constructors (See [7.2.5](#)), because you do not need to declare a type and to calculate manually the number of expressions. However, to make your programs more portable, we recommend to use the standard features.

### 7.6.7 Set complement

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

As in Oberon-2, an unary minus applied to a set denotes the complement of that set, i.e.  $-x$  is the set of all values which are not the elements of  $x$ .

```

TYPE SmallSet = SET OF [0..5];
VAR x, y: SmallSet;
BEGIN
  x := SmallSet{1,3,5};
  y := -x;                      (* y = {0, 2, 4} *)
  y := SmallSet{0..5} - x;      (* y = {0, 2, 4} *)
END;

```

### 7.6.8 Read-only parameters

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

In a formal parameter section, the symbol "-" may be placed after the name of a value parameter. Such a parameter is called *read-only*; its value can not be changed in the procedure body. Read-only parameters do not need to be copied before procedure activation; this enables procedures with structured parameters to be more effective.

For ARRAY and RECORD read-only parameters, the array elements and record fields are protected. Read-only parameters cannot be used in definition modules.

We recommend to use read-only parameters with care. The compiler does not check that the read-only parameter is not modified via another parameter or a global variable.

#### Example

```

PROCEDURE Foo(VAR dest: ARRAY OF CHAR;
              source-: ARRAY OF CHAR);
BEGIN
  dest[0] := 'a';
  dest[1] := source[0];
END Foo;

```

The call `Foo(x,x)` would produce a wrong result, because the first `Foo` statement changes the value of `source[0]` (`source` is not copied and points to the same location as `dest`).

### 7.6.9 Variable number of parameters

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

The last formal parameter of a procedure may be declared as a “sequence of bytes” (SEQ-parameter). In a procedure call, any (possibly empty) sequence of actual parameters of any types may be substituted in place of that parameter. Only the declaration

SEQ name : SYSTEM.BYTE

is allowed. A procedure may have only one SEQ parameter, and it must be the last element of the formal parameters list.

Within the procedure, sequence parameters are very similar to open array parameters. This means that :

- the HIGH function can be applied to the parameter;
- a SEQ actual parameter may be subsequently passed to another procedure
- the  $i$ -th byte of the sequence  $s$  can be accessed as  $s[i]$ , like an array element.

An array of bytes, which is passed to a procedure as a formal SEQ-parameter, is formed as follows:

- values of all actual parameters forming the sequence are represented as described below and concatenated into an array in their textual order
- integer values are converted to LONGINT
- BOOLEAN, CHAR, cardinal and enumeration values are converted to LONGCARD
- values of range types are converted according to their base types
- real values are converted to LONGREAL
- values of pointer, opaque and procedure types are converted to ADDRESS
- a structured value (record or array) is interpreted as an array of bytes and passed as a sequence of:
  - the address of the structure



- a zero 32-bit word (reserved for future extensions)
- size of the structure (in LOCs) minus one

See [11.4.4](#) for further information.

### 7.6.10 Read-only export

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

The Oberon-2 read-only export symbol "-", being specified after a variable or field identifier in a definition module will define the identifier as read-only for any client. Only the module in which a read-only variable or field is declared may change its value.

The compiler will not allow the value of a read-only exported object to be changed explicitly (by an assignment) or implicitly (by passing it as a VAR parameter).

For read-only variables of an array or record type, both array elements and record fields are also read-only.

**Example (an excerpt from a definition module):**

```
TYPE Rec = RECORD
  n-: INTEGER;
  m : INTEGER;
END;

VAR
  in-: FILE;
  x-: Rec;
```

### 7.6.11 Renaming of imported modules

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

An imported module can be renamed inside the importing module. The real name of the module becomes invisible.

```
Import = IMPORT [ Ident "!=" ] Ident
          { " , " [ Ident "!=" ] ident } " ; " .
```

**Example**

```
MODULE test;
IMPORT vw := VirtualWorkstation;

VAR ws: vw.Station;

BEGIN
    ws := vw.open();
END test.
```

**7.6.12 NEW and DISPOSE for dynamic arrays**

Standard procedures `NEW` and `DISPOSE` can be applied to variables of a dynamic array type (See [7.6.5](#)). Procedures `DYNALLOCATE` and `DYNDEALLOCATE` have to be visible in the calling context. Their headers and semantics are described below.

```
PROCEDURE DYNALLOCATE(VAR a: ADDRESS;
                      size: CARDINAL;
                      len: ARRAY OF CARDINAL);
```

The procedure must allocate a dynamic array and return its address in `a`. `size` is the size of the array base type (the size of an element) and `len[i]` is the length of the array in  $i$ -th dimension.

```
PROCEDURE DYNDEALLOCATE(VAR a: ADDRESS;
                        size,dim: CARDINAL);
```

The procedure must deallocate a dynamic array, where `size` is the size of an element and `dim` is the number of dimensions.

**Note:** In most cases, default implementation of these procedures may be used. The **STORAGE** option controls whether the default memory management should be enabled.

A dynamic array is represented as a pointer to a so-called *array descriptor* (See [11.3.7](#)).

### 7.6.13 HALT

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

An optional integer parameter is allowed for the HALT procedure.

```
PROCEDURE HALT ([code: INTEGER]);
```

HALT terminates the program execution with an optional return code. Consult your operating system/environment documentation for more details.

### 7.6.14 ASSERT

NOTE: Only valid when option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set.

The procedure ASSERT checks its boolean parameter and terminates the program if it is not TRUE. The second optional parameter denotes *task termination code*. If it is omitted, a standard value is assumed.

```
PROCEDURE ASSERT(cond: BOOLEAN [; code: INTEGER]);
```

A call `ASSERT(expr, code)` is equivalent to

```
IF NOT expr THEN HALT(code) END;
```

## 7.7 Source code directives

Source code directives (or pragmas) are used to set compilation options in the source text and to select specific pieces of the source text to be compiled (conditional compilation). The ISO Modula-2 standard does not describe pragma syntax. XDS supports source code directives in both Modula-2 and Oberon-2. The syntax described in *The Oakwood Guidelines for the Oberon-2 Compiler Developers* is used.

### 7.7.1 Inline options and equations

In some cases it is more desirable to set a compiler option or equation within the source text. Some compiler options, such as **MAIN**, are more meaningful in the source file before the module header, and some, such as run-time checks, even between statements.

XDS allows options to be changed in the source text by using standard ISO pseudo comments `<* . . . *>`<sup>9</sup> Some options can only be placed in the source text before the module header (i.e. before keywords `IMPLEMENTATION`, `DEFINITION`, and `MODULE`). These options will be ignored if found elsewhere in the source text. See 5.2 for more details.

The format of an inline option or equation setting is described by the following syntax:

```
Pragma      = "<*" PragmaBody ">"
PragmaBody  = PUSH | POP | NewStyle | OldStyle
NewStyle    = [ NEW ] name [ "+" | "-" | "=" string ]
OldStyle    = ( "+" | "-" ) name
```

`NewStyle` is proposed as the Oakwood standard for Oberon-2, `OldStyle` is the style used in the previous XDS releases. All option names are case-independent. If `OldStyle` is used, there should be no space between `<*` and `+` or `-` `OldStyle` does not allow to declare a new option or equation and to change an equation value.

In all cases, the symbol `+` sets the corresponding option ON, and the symbol `-` sets it OFF.

`PUSH` and `POP` keywords may be used to save and restore the whole state of options and equations.

## Examples

```
PROCEDURE Length(VAR a: ARRAY OF CHAR): CARDINAL;
  VAR i: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
  <* PUSH *>                      (* save state *)
  <* CHECKINDEX - *>              (* turn CHECKINDEX off *)
  i := 0;
  WHILE (i<=HIGH(a)) & (a[i]#0C) DO INC(i) END;
  <* POP *>                      (* restore state *)
  RETURN i;
END Length;

<* ALIGNMENT = "2" *>
```

---

<sup>9</sup>The old pragma style `( *$. . *)` is supported to provide backward compatibility, but the compiler reports the “obsolete syntax” warning.

```

TYPE
  R = RECORD          (* This record is 6 bytes long *)
    f1: CHAR;
    f2: CARDINAL;
  END;

```

### 7.7.2 Conditional compilation

It is possible to use conditional compilation with Modula-2 and Oberon-2<sup>10</sup> compilers via the standard ISO pragma notation `< * >`. Conditional compilation statements can be placed anywhere in the source code. The syntax of the conditional compilation IF statement follows:

```

IfStatement      = < * IF Expression THEN * > text
                  { < * ELSIF Expression THEN * > text }
                  [ < * ELSE * > text ]
                  < * END * >
Expression       = SimpleExpression
                  [ ("=" | "#") SimpleExpression ].
SimpleExpression = Term { "OR" Term }.
Term             = Factor { "&" Factor }.
Factor          = Ident | string |
                  "DEFINED" "(" Ident ")" |
                  "(" Expression ")" |
                  "~" Factor | "NOT" Factor.
Ident           = option | equation.

```

An operand in an expression is either a name of an option or equation or a string literal. An option has the string value "TRUE", if it is currently set ON and "FALSE", if it is currently set off or was not defined at all. The compiler will report a warning if an undeclared option or equation is used as a conditional compilation identifier.

The comparison operators "=" and "#" are not case sensitive.

See also the section [5.6](#).

### Examples

---

<sup>10</sup>only if the **O2ISOPRAGMA** option is set ON

```
IMPORT lib :=
  <* IF __GEN_X86__ THEN *> MyX86Lib;
  <* ELSIF __GEN_C__ THEN *> MyCLib;
  <* ELSE *> *** Unknown ***
  <* END *>

CONST Win = <* IF Windows THEN *> TRUE
  <* ELSE *> FALSE
  <* END *>;

<* IF DEFINED(Debug) & (DebugLevel = "2") THEN *>
  PrintDebugInformation;
<* END *>;

<* IF target_os = "OS2" THEN *>
  Strings.Capitalize(filename);
  <* IF NOT HPFS THEN *>
    TruncateFileName(filename);
  <* END *>
<* END *>
```

# Chapter 8

## XDS Oberon-2

This chapter includes the details of the Oberon-2 language which are specific for this implementation. In the standard mode<sup>1</sup> XDS Oberon-2 is fully compatible with ETH compilers (See *The Oberon-2 Report*). The last changes to the language are described in 8.2.

To provide a smooth path from Modula-2 to Oberon-2 XDS allows all Modula-2 data types to be used in Oberon-2 modules (See 8.4).

Several language extensions are implemented in the language according to *The Oakwood Guidelines for the Oberon-2 Compiler Developers*<sup>2</sup> (See 8.3). Other language extensions are described in 8.5. As XDS is a truly multi-lingual system, special features were introduced to provide interfacing to foreign languages (See Chapter 10).

### 8.1 The Oberon environment

The Oberon-2 language was originally designed for use in an environment that provides *command activation*, *garbage collection*, and *dynamic loading* of the modules. Not being a part of the language, these features still contribute to the power of Oberon-2.

The garbage collector and command activation are implemented in the Oberon Run-Time Support and can be used in any program. The dynamic loader is not provided in the current release. See 9.3 for further information.

---

<sup>1</sup>When the options **O2EXTENSIONS** and **O2NUMEXT** are OFF.

<sup>2</sup>These guidelines have been produced by a group of Oberon-2 compiler developers, including ETH developers, after a meeting at the Oakwood Hotel in Croydon, UK in June 1993.

### 8.1.1 Program structure

In an Oberon-2 environment, any declared parameterless procedure can be considered as a main procedure and can be called by its name (a qualified identifier of the form `ModuleName.ProcName`).

Due to the nature of XDS, and its freedom from the Oberon system, a different approach had to be found to declare the ‘top level’ or program modules.

The module which contains the top level of your program must be compiled it with the **MAIN** option set. This will generate an entry point to your program. Only one module per program shall be compiled with the option set. It is recommended to set it in the module header:

```
<+ MAIN *>
MODULE hello;

IMPORT InOut;

BEGIN
  InOut.WriteString ("Hello World!");
  InOut.WriteLine;
END hello.
```

### 8.1.2 Creating a definition

XDS provides two different ways to create a definition for an Oberon-2 module:

- the **BROWSE** operation mode (see [4.2.5](#)) creates a definition module from a symbol file
- the **MAKEDEF** option forces the Oberon-2 compiler to generate a (pseudo) definition module after successful compilation of an Oberon-2 module.

The **MAKEDEF** option provides additional services: the compiler will preserve the so-called *exported* comments (i.e. comments which start with ‘**(\*\*)**’) if the **XCOMMENTS** option is ON.

The generated pseudo-definition module contains all exported declarations in the order of their appearance in the source text. All exported comments are placed at the appropriate positions.



A definition can be generated in three *styles*. The **BSTYLE** equation can be used to choose one of the styles: **DEF** (default), **DOC** or **MOD**.

### The DEF style

This produces an ETH-style definition module. All *type-bound procedures (methods)* and relative comments are shown as parts of the corresponding record types.

This is the only style for which the **BSREDEFINE** and **BSCLOSURE** options are applicable.

### The DOC style

This produces a pseudo-definition module in which methods are shown as parts of the appropriate record types (ignoring comments) and at the positions at which they occur in the source text.

### The MOD style

This attempts to produce a file which can be compiled as an Oberon-2 module after slight modification (i.e. the file will contain "END procname", etc.)

## 8.2 Last changes to the language

### 8.2.1 ASSERT

The procedure **ASSERT** checks its boolean parameter and terminates the program if it is not **TRUE**. The second optional parameter denotes a *task termination code*. If omitted, a standard value is assumed.

```
PROCEDURE ASSERT(cond: BOOLEAN [; code: INTEGER]);
```

A call **ASSERT(expr, code)** is equivalent to

```
IF NOT expr THEN HALT(code) END;
```

### 8.2.2 Underscores in identifiers

According to the *Oakwood Guidelines* an underscore ("\_") may be used in identifiers (as a letter).

```
ident = ( letter | "_" ) { letter | digit | "_" }
```

We recommend to use underscores with care, as it may cause problems with software portability to other compilers. This feature may be important for interfacing to foreign languages (See Chapter 10).

### 8.2.3 Source code directives

Source code directives (or pragmas) are used to set compilation options in the source text and to select specific pieces of the source text to be compiled (conditional compilation). According to the *Oakwood Guidelines* all directives are contained in ISO Modula-2 style pseudo comments using angled brackets `<* . . . *>`.

The additional language constructs should not be considered to be part of the Oberon-2 language. They define a separate compiler control language that coexist with Oberon-2. The option **O2ISOPRAGMA** allows pragmas to be used.

The syntax of the directives is the same for Modula-2 and Oberon-2. See 7.7 for further details.

## 8.3 Oakwood numeric extensions

XDS Oberon-2 supports two extensions which are of importance for scientific programming, namely

- complex numbers
- in-line exponentiation operator

The **O2NUMEXT** option should be set to use these extensions.

### 8.3.1 Complex numbers

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2NUMEXT** is set.

Two additional types are included in the type hierarchy if the **O2NUMEXT** option is set:

COMPLEX	defined as	( REAL , REAL )
LONGCOMPLEX	defined as	( LONGREAL , LONGREAL )

All numeric types form a (partial) hierarchy

$$\text{whole types} \subset \text{REAL} \subseteq \begin{matrix} \text{COMPLEX} \\ \text{LONGREAL} \end{matrix} \subseteq \text{LONGCOMPLEX}$$

A common mathematical notation is used for complex number literals:

```
number = integer | real | complex
complex = real "i"
```

A literal of the form 5.0i denotes a complex number with real part equal to zero and an imaginary part equal to 5.0. Complex constants with a non-zero real part can be described using arithmetic operators.

```
CONST
  i = 1.i;
  x = 1. + 1.i;
```

For the declarations

```
VAR
  c: COMPLEX;
  l: LONGCOMPLEX;
  r: REAL;
  x: INTEGER;
```

the following statements are valid:

```
c:=i+r;
l:=c;
l:=c*r;
l:=l*c;
```

New conversion functions RE and IM can be used to obtain a real or imaginary part of a value of a complex type. Both functions have one parameter. If the parameter is of the COMPLEX type, both functions return a REAL value; if the parameter is of the LONGCOMPLEX type, functions return a LONGREAL value; otherwise the parameter should be a complex constant and functions return a real constant.

A complex value can be formed by applying the standard function CMPLX to two reals. If both CMPLX arguments are real constants, the result is a complex constant.

```
CONST i = CMPLX(0.0,1.0);
```

If both expressions are of the `REAL` type, the function returns a `COMPLEX` value, otherwise it returns a `LONGCOMPLEX` value.

### 8.3.2 In-line exponentiation

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2NUMEXT** is set.

The exponentiation operator `**` provides a convenient notation for arithmetic expressions, which does not involve function calls. It is an arithmetic operator which has a higher precedence than multiplication operators.

```
Term      = Exponent { MulOp Exponent }.
Exponent = Factor { "***" Factor }.
```

**Note:** the operator is right-associated:

$a * b * c$  is evaluated as  $a * (b * c)$

The left operand of the exponentiation (`a**b`) should be any numeric value (including complex), while the right operand should be of a real or integer type. The result type does not depend of the type of right operand and is defined by the table:

Left operand type	Result type
an integer type	REAL
REAL	REAL
LONGREAL	LONGREAL
COMPLEX	COMPLEX
LONGCOMPLEX	LONGCOMPLEX

## 8.4 Using Modula-2 features

All Modula-2 types and corresponding operations can be used in Oberon-2, including enumeration types, range types, records with variant parts, sets, etc.

### Important Notes:

- It is not allowed to declare Modula-2 types in an Oberon-2 module.

- A module using Modula-2 features is likely to be non-portable to other compilers.

**Example**

```
(*MODULA-2*) DEFINITION MODULE UsefulTypes;

TYPE
  TranslationTable = ARRAY CHAR OF CHAR;
  Color    = (red,green,blue);
  Colors = SET OF Color;

END UsefulTypes.

(*OBERON-2*) MODULE UsingM2;

IMPORT UsefulTypes;

TYPE
  TranslationTable* = UsefulTypes.TranslationTable;

VAR colors*: UsefulTypes.Color;

BEGIN
  colors:=UsefulTypes.Colors{UsefulTypes.red};
END UsingM2.
```

## 8.5 Language extensions

**Warning:** Using extensions may cause problems with the software portability to other compilers.

In the standard mode, the XDS Oberon-2 compiler is fully compatible with ETH compilers (See also [8.2](#)). The **O2EXTENSIONS** option enables some language extensions. The main purposes of language extensions are

- to improve interfacing to other languages (See [Chapter 10](#)).
- to provide backward compatibility with the previous versions of XDS.

**See also**

- Source language directives ([8.2.3](#))
- Oakwood numeric extensions ([8.3](#)).

**8.5.1 Comments**

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

As well as "(\*\*)", there is another valid format for comments in source texts. The portion of a line from "--" to the end of line is considered a comment.

```
VAR j: INTEGER; -- this is a comment
```

**8.5.2 String concatenation**

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

The symbol "+" can be used for constant string and characters concatenation. See [7.2.4](#) for more details.

**8.5.3 VAL function**

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

The function VAL can be used to obtain a value of the specified scalar type from an expression of a scalar type. See [7.2.10](#) for more details.

```
PROCEDURE VAL(Type; expr: ScalarType): Type;
```

The function can be applied to any scalar types, including system fixed size types (See [8.6.2](#)).

**8.5.4 Read-only parameters**

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

In a formal parameter section, the symbol "`-`" may appear after a name of a value parameter. That parameter is called *read-only*; its value can not be changed in the procedure's body. Read-only parameters need not to be copied before the procedure activation; this enables procedures with structured parameters to be more effective. Read-only parameters can not be used in a procedure type declaration.

We recommend to use read-only parameters with care. The compiler does not check that the read-only parameter is not modified via another parameter or a global variable.

### Example

```
PROCEDURE Foo(VAR dest: ARRAY OF CHAR;  
              source-: ARRAY OF CHAR);  
  
BEGIN  
  dest[0] := 'a';  
  dest[1] := source[0];  
END Foo;
```

The call `Foo(x, x)` would produce a wrong result, because the first statement changes the value of `source[0]` (`source` is not copied and points to the same location as `dest`).

## 8.5.5 Variable number of parameters

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

Everything contained in the section [7.6.9](#) is applicable to Oberon-2.

## 8.5.6 Value constructors

NOTE: Only valid when option **O2EXTENSIONS** is set.

Everything contained in the section [7.2.5](#) is applicable to Oberon-2.

## 8.6 The Oberon-2 module SYSTEM

Low-level facilities are provided by the module `SYSTEM`. This module does not exist in the same sense as other library modules; it is hard-coded into the compiler

itself. However, to use the provided facilities, it must be imported in the usual way.

Some procedures in the module `SYSTEM` are generic procedures that cannot be explicitly declared, i.e. they apply to classes of operand types.

XDS Oberon-2 compiler implements all system features described in *The Oberon-2 Report* (except `GETREG`, `PUTREG`, and `CC`) and allows one to access all features, described in the Modula-2 International Standard Modula-2 (See 7.5). In this section we describe only features specific for this implementation.

### 8.6.1 Compatibility with `BYTE`

Expressions of types `CHAR`, `BOOLEAN`, `SHORTINT` and `SYSTEM.CARD8` can be assigned to variables of type `BYTE` or passed as actual parameters to formal parameters of type `BYTE`.

If a formal procedure parameter has type `ARRAY OF BYTE`, then the corresponding actual parameter may be of any type, except numeric literals.

### 8.6.2 Whole system types

Module `SYSTEM` contains the signed types `INT8`, `INT16`, `INT32`, and unsigned types `CARD8`, `CARD16`, `CARD32`, which are guaranteed to contain exactly 8, 16, or 32 bits respectively. These types were introduced to simplify constructing the interfaces to foreign libraries (See Chapter 10). The basic types `SHORTINT`, `INTEGER`, `LONGINT` are synonyms of `INT8`, `INT16`, and `INT32` respectively.

The unsigned types form a hierarchy whereby larger types include (the values of) smaller types.

$$\text{SYSTEM.CARD32} \supseteq \text{SYSTEM.CARD16} \supseteq \text{SYSTEM.CARD8}$$

The whole hierarchy of numeric types (See also 8.3.1):

$$\text{LONGREAL} \supseteq \text{REAL} \supseteq \begin{cases} \text{signed types} \\ \text{unsigned types} \end{cases}$$

### 8.6.3 `NEW` and `DISPOSE`

The procedure `SYSTEM.NEW` can be used to allocate the system memory, i.e. memory which is not the subject of garbage collection. `SYSTEM.NEW` is a generic



procedure, which is applied to pointer types and can be used in several ways, depending on pointer's base type.

```
PROCEDURE NEW(VAR p: AnyPointer [; x0,..xn: integer]);
```

Let type  $P$  be defined as `POINTER TO  $T$`  and  $p$  is of type  $P$ .

<code>NEW(<math>p</math>)</code>	$T$ is a record or fixed length array type. The procedure allocates a storage block of <code>SIZE(<math>T</math>)</code> bytes and assigns its address to $p$ .
<code>NEW(<math>p, n</math>)</code>	$T$ is a record or fixed length array type. The procedure allocates a storage block of $n$ bytes and assigns its address to $p$ .
<code>NEW(<math>p, x_0, \dots x_{n-1}</math>)</code>	$T$ is an $n$ -dimensional open array. The procedure allocates an open array of lengths given by the expressions $x_0, \dots x_{n-1}$

The procedure `SYSTEM.DISPOSE` can be used to free a block previously allocated by a call to `SYSTEM.NEW`. It does *not* immediately deallocate the block, but marks it as a free block. The block will be deallocated by the next call of the garbage collector.

```
PROCEDURE DISPOSE(VAR p: AnyPointer; [size: integer]);
```

<code>DISPOSE(<math>p</math>)</code>	$T$ is a record or array type. The procedure deallocates the storage block $p$ points to.
<code>DISPOSE(<math>p, n</math>)</code>	$T$ is a record or fixed length array type. The procedure deallocates the storage block of $n$ bytes $p$ points to.

#### 8.6.4 M2ADR

In Oberon-2, the `SYSTEM.ADR` procedure returns `LONGINT`, which is not always very convenient. The `SYSTEM.M2ADR` procedure behaves as Modula-2 `SYSTEM.ADR`, returning `SYSTEM.ADDRESS`:

```
PROCEDURE M2ADR(VAR x: any type): ADDRESS;
```



# Chapter 9

## Run-time support

Some language features are implemented in the run-time library, including:

- run-time checks
- exceptions and finalization
- coroutines
- memory management
- garbage collection
- postmortem history

XDS provides an integrated Modula-2 and Oberon-2 run-time library, taking into account the possibility that modules written in both languages are used in one project. As a rule, if you do not use a particular feature, the part of RTS that implements that feature will not be added to your executable program. For example, if your program is written entirely in Modula-2, the Oberon-2 part of RTS (garbage collector, meta-language facilities) will not be included.

The integrated memory manager is described in [9.1](#). The section [9.3](#) describes an interface to the Oberon-2 run-time support.

### 9.1 Memory management

The XDS integrated memory manager implements

- default memory allocation and deallocation procedures for Modula-2 (See the option **STORAGE**);
- memory allocation procedures for Oberon-2;
- system memory allocation procedures for Oberon-2 (See 8.6.3);
- the garbage collector.

The compiler provides the option **GCAUTO** and the equation **HEAPLIMIT** to control the memory management. They should be set when the top-level module of the program is compiled<sup>1</sup>. The compiler uses their values when generating the RTS initialization call.

The equation **HEAPLIMIT** specifies the maximum size of the heap in bytes. If that equation is set to zero, the run-time system automatically determines heap size at startup and dynamically adjusts it according to application's memory use and system load.

The option **GCAUTO** allows the garbage collector to be called implicitly. If the option is not set the garbage collector must be called explicitly (See 9.3). The garbage collector is called implicitly by the memory allocation procedure in the following cases:

- a memory block of the requested length cannot be allocated;
- the amount of busy memory exceeds the limit specified by the **HEAPLIMIT** equation (or the limit chosen by the run-time system if **HEAPLIMIT** was set to zero during compilation);
- the amount of busy memory exceeds some limit set internally by the memory manager for optimum performance.

If the memory block still cannot be allocated after the call to the garbage collector, the exception `XEXCEPTIONS.noMemoryException` will be raised by the Oberon-2 memory allocation procedure<sup>2</sup>.

**Note:** In a pure Modula-2 program, the garbage collector is never invoked, so you may set the **HEAPLIMIT** equation to a very large value.

---

<sup>1</sup> We recommend to set them in the configuration file or a project file.

<sup>2</sup>In Modula-2 it has to return `NIL` if failed to allocate a memory block.

## 9.2 Postmortem history

If the option **GENHISTORY** was set ON when your program was compiled, the run-time system prints a stack of procedure calls on abnormal termination of your program, including

- a file name
- a line number
- a program counter value
- a procedure name (sometimes)

**Note:** all modules constituting your program should be compiled with the option **LINENO** set ON.

**Note:** Turning the **GENHISTORY** option ON slows down your code, cause the translator inserts extra RTS calls into every generated function. It should be done when you compile the main module of your program, in its header, compiler command line, or project (we recommend the last approach).

The following example shows a sketch of a program and the procedure stack:

```
PROCEDURE P1;  
  (* uninitialized variable: *)  
  VAR x: ARRAY [0..50] OF INTEGER;  
BEGIN  
  i:=i DIV j;    (* line 50 *)  
END P1;  
  
PROCEDURE P2;  
BEGIN  
  i:=i DIV j;    (* line 100 *)  
END P2;  
  
PROCEDURE P3;  
BEGIN  
  P1;            (* line 150 *)  
END P3;
```

#RTS: No exception handler #6: zero or negative divisor

Source file	LINE	OFFSET	PROCEDURE
"test.mod"	50	000000DE	
"test.mod"	100	0000024C	
"test.mod"	150	0000051D	

It is obvious from the source text that the procedure P1 cannot be called from P2. The second line is superfluous.

## 9.3 The oberonRTS module

The run-time support (RTS) is an integral part of the Oberon-2 language implementation. It includes command activation, memory allocation, garbage collection and meta-language facilities. The module **oberonRTS** (written in Modula-2) provides an interface to these features.

### 9.3.1 Types and variables

```

TYPE
  Module;  (* run-time data structure for a module *)
  Type;    (* run-time data structure for a data type *)
  Command = PROC; (* parameterless procedure *)
  CARDINAL = SYSTEM.CARD32;

VAR
  nullModule: Module; (* Null value of type Module *)
  nullType: Type;      (* Null value of type Type *)

```

### 9.3.2 Garbage collection

<b>Collect</b>	<i>Garbage Collector</i>
----------------	--------------------------

```
PROCEDURE Collect;
```

Invokes the garbage collector.

<b>GetInfo</b>	<i>Get Memory Information</i>
----------------	-------------------------------

```
PROCEDURE GetInfo(VAR objects, busymem: CARDINAL);
```

Returns the number of allocated objects and the total size of the allocated memory.

### 9.3.3 Object finalization

A system with garbage collection has some specific features. Its main difference from systems without garbage collection is that deallocation of any system resource must be postponed until garbage collection. For example, let some data structure contain descriptors of open files. To close a file (i.e. to destroy its descriptor), one needs to know that there are no references to that file. This information becomes known only in the course of garbage collection. The same argument also holds for other kinds of resources.

One immediate implication is that there must be some *finalization* mechanism: the ability to perform certain operations with an object when there are no more references to it.

XDS allows a finalization procedure to be attached to any dynamically allocated object.

<b>Finalizer</b>	<i>Type of a finalization procedure</i>
------------------	---

```
TYPE Finalizer = PROCEDURE (SYSTEM.ADDRESS);
```

<b>InstallFinalizer</b>	<i>Set a finalizer to an object</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------------------

```
PROCEDURE InstallFinalizer(f: Finalizer;
                           obj: SYSTEM.ADDRESS);
```

The procedure sets the finalization procedure *f* for the object *obj*. That procedure will be called when the object becomes unreachable.

**Note:** a finalizer is called on the GC stack (stack size is limited).

#### Example

```
TYPE
```

```

Obj = POINTER TO ObjDesc;
ObjDesc = RECORD
    file: File; (* file handler *)
END;

PROCEDURE Final(x: SYSTEM.ADDRESS);
    VAR o: Obj;
BEGIN
    o:=SYSTEM.CAST(Obj,x);
    IF o.file # NIL THEN Close(file) END;
END Final;

PROCEDURE Create(): Obj;
    VAR o: Obj;
BEGIN
    NEW(o);
    o.file:=NIL;
    oberonRTS.InstallFinalizer(Final,o);
    TryOpen(o.file);
END Create;

```

### 9.3.4 Meta-language facilities

The meta-programming operations can be used to retrieve the type of an object, to create an object of the given type, to get the name of a type and a type by its name, etc.

<b>Search</b>	<i>Search a Module by its Name</i>
---------------	------------------------------------

```
PROCEDURE Search(name: ARRAY OF CHAR): Module;
```

Returns a module by its name or nullModule.

<b>NameOfModule</b>	<i>Name of Module</i>
---------------------	-----------------------

```
PROCEDURE NameOfModule(m: Module;
    VAR name: ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

Returns the name of the Module.



<b>ThisCommand</b>	<i>Get Command by its Name</i>
--------------------	--------------------------------

```
PROCEDURE ThisCommand(m: Module;
                      name: ARRAY OF CHAR;
                      ): Command;
```

Returns the command (parameterless procedure) named "name" in the module m or NIL, if the command does not exist.

<b>ThisType</b>	<i>Get Type by its Name</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------

```
PROCEDURE ThisType(m: Module;
                  name: ARRAY OF CHAR): Type;
```

Returns the type named "name" declared in the module m or nullType, if there is no such type.

<b>SizeOf</b>	<i>Size of Type</i>
---------------	---------------------

```
PROCEDURE SizeOf(t: Type): INTEGER;
```

Returns the size (in bytes) of an object of the type t.

<b>BaseOf</b>	<i>Base of Type</i>
---------------	---------------------

```
PROCEDURE BaseOf(t: Type; level: INTEGER): Type;
```

Returns the *level*-th base type of t.

<b>LevelOf</b>	<i>Level of Type Extension</i>
----------------	--------------------------------

```
PROCEDURE LevelOf(t: Type): INTEGER;
```

Returns a level of the type extension.

<b>ModuleOf</b>	<i>Module of Type</i>
-----------------	-----------------------

```
PROCEDURE ModuleOf(t: Type): Module;
```

Returns the module in which the type *t* was declared.

<b>NameOfType</b>	<i>Name of Type</i>
-------------------	---------------------

```
PROCEDURE NameOfType(t: Type; VAR name: ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

Returns the name of the record type *t*.

<b>TypeOf</b>	<i>Type of Object</i>
---------------	-----------------------

```
PROCEDURE TypeOf(obj: SYSTEM.ADDRESS): Type;
```

Returns the type of the object *obj*.

<b>NewObj</b>	<i>Create Object</i>
---------------	----------------------

```
PROCEDURE NewObj(type: Type): SYSTEM.ADDRESS;
```

Creates a new object of the type *type*.

### 9.3.5 Module iterators

The module `oberonRTS` provides procedures which can be used to iterate all loaded modules, all commands, and all object types (i.e., exported record types).

<b>NameIterator</b>	<i>Iterator Type</i>
---------------------	----------------------

```
TYPE
  NameIterator = PROCEDURE (
    (*context:*) SYSTEM.ADDRESS,
    (*name:*) ARRAY OF CHAR
  ): BOOLEAN;
```

A procedure of type `NameIterator` is called by an iterator on each iterated item. An iterator passes the name of the item along with the so-called *context*

word. This allows some context information to be passed to the user-defined procedure (e.g., a file handler). If the procedure returns FALSE, the iteration is terminated.

**IterModules***Iterate all Modules*

```
PROCEDURE IterModules(context: SYSTEM.ADDRESS;  
                      iter: NameIterator);
```

The procedure iterates all Oberon-2 modules.

**IterCommands***Iterate Commands*

```
PROCEDURE IterCommands(mod: Module;  
                       context: SYSTEM.ADDRESS;  
                       iter: NameIterator);
```

Iterates all commands implemented in the module mod.

**IterTypes***Iterate Record Types*

```
PROCEDURE IterTypes(mod: Module;  
                   context: SYSTEM.WORD;  
                   iter: NameIterator);
```

Iterates all record types declared in the module mod.



# Chapter 10

## Multilanguage programming

XDS allows you to mix Modula-2, Oberon-2, C, and Assembler modules, libraries, and object files in one project.

### 10.1 Modula-2 and Oberon-2

It is not necessary to notify the compiler of using Modula-2 objects in Oberon-2 module and vice versa. The compiler will detect the language automatically when processing symbol files on `IMPORT` clause.

#### 10.1.1 Basic types

In Oberon-2 the basic types have the same length on all platforms. In Modula-2 the size of types `INTEGER`, `CARDINAL` and `BITSET` may be different and depends on the value of the **M2BASE16** option. The following table summarizes the correspondence between the basic types.

Type	Size	Oberon-2	Modula-2	
			M2BASE16+	M2BASE16-
integer	8	SHORTINT	—	—
integer	16	INTEGER	INTEGER	—
integer	32	LONGINT	—	INTEGER
cardinal	8	—	—	—
cardinal	16	—	CARDINAL	—
cardinal	32	—	—	CARDINAL
bitset	16	—	BITSET	—
bitset	32	SET	—	BITSET

The system types `INT` and `CARD` correspond to Modula-2 `INTEGER` and `CARDINAL` types respectively. We recommend to use `INT` and `CARD` in Oberon-2 when importing Modula-2 modules. For example, if the procedure `Foo` is defined in the Modula-2 definition module `M` as

```
DEFINITION MODULE M;

PROCEDURE Foo(VAR x: INTEGER);

END M.
```

its portable usage in Oberon-2 is as follows:

```
VAR x: SYSTEM.INT;

. . .
M.Foo(x);
```

### 10.1.2 Data structures

XDS allows any Modula-2 data structures to be used in Oberon-2 modules, even those that can not be defined in Oberon-2 (e.g. variant records, range types, set types, enumerations, etc).

However, usage of Modula-2 types in Oberon-2 and vice versa is restricted. Whenever possible XDS tries to produce the correct code. If a correct translation is impossible, an error is reported:

- a Modula-2 record field type cannot be of an Oberon-2 pointer, record or array type;

- a Modula-2 pointer to an Oberon-2 record cannot be used in specific Oberon-2 constructs (type-bound procedures, type guards, etc);
- an opaque type can not be defined as an Oberon pointer.

Standard procedures `NEW` and `DISPOSE` are always applied according to the language of a parameter's type. For example, for the following declarations in an Oberon-2 module:

```
TYPE
  Rec = RECORD END;
  MP  = POINTER ["Modula"] TO Rec; (* Modula pointer *)
  OP  = POINTER TO Rec;          (* Oberon pointer *)
VAR
  m: MP;
  o: OP;
```

the call `NEW(m)` will be treated as a call to the Modula-2 default `ALLOCATE`, while `NEW(o)` will be treated as a call of the standard Oberon-2 run-time routine. See also [10.2](#).

Implicit memory deallocation (garbage collection) is applied to Oberon-2 objects only. If a variable of a Modula-2 pointer type is declared in an Oberon-2 module, it shall be deallocated explicitly.

### Example: Using the Modula data type in Oberon

```
(* Modula-2*) DEFINITION MODULE m2;
TYPE
  Rec = RECORD (* a record with variant parts *)
    CASE tag: BOOLEAN OF
      | TRUE:  i: INTEGER;
      | FALSE: r: REAL;
    END;
  END;
  Ptr = POINTER TO Rec;

VAR
  r: Rec;
  p: Ptr;
```

```
PROCEDURE Foo(VAR r: Rec);

END m2.

(* Oberon-2 *) MODULE o2;

IMPORT m2; (* import of a Modula-2 module *)

VAR
  r: m2.Rec;  (* using the Modula-2 record type *)
  p: m2.Ptr;  (* using the Modula-2 pointer type *)
  x: POINTER TO m2.Rec;

BEGIN
  NEW(p);      (* Modula-2 default ALLOCATE *)
  NEW(x);      (* Oberon-2 NEW *)
  m2.Foo(r);
  m2.Foo(p^);
  m2.Foo(x^);
END o2.
```

### 10.1.3 Garbage collection

It is important to remember that Modula-2 and Oberon-2 have different approaches to memory utilization. When a program contains both Modula-2 and Oberon-2 modules, garbage collection is used. See [9.1](#) for more information.

## 10.2 Direct language specification

The compiler must know the implementation language of a module to take into account different semantics of different languages and to produce correct code.

In some cases, it is necessary for a procedure or data type to be implemented according to the rules of a language other than that of the whole module. In XDS, it is possible to explicitly specify the language of a type or object. *Direct language specification (DLS)* is allowed either if language extensions are enabled or if the module SYSTEM is imported.

In a record, pointer, or procedure type declaration, or in a procedure declaration,



the desired language (or, more precisely, the way in which that declaration is treated by the compiler) can be specified as "[ language ]" immediately following the keyword RECORD, POINTER, or PROCEDURE. language can be a string or integer constant expression<sup>1</sup>:

Convention	String	Integer
Oberon-2	"Oberon"	0
Modula-2	"Modula"	1
C	"C"	2
Pascal	"Pascal"	5
Win32 API	"StdCall"	7
OS/2 API	"SysCall"	8

Examples:

```
TYPE
  UntracedPtr = POINTER ["Modula"] TO Rec;
```

Here UntracedPtr is defined as a Modula-2 pointer, hence all variables of that type will not be traced by garbage collector.

```
PROCEDURE ["C"] sig_handler (id : SYSTEM.int);
. . .
  signal.signal(signal.SYSSEGV, sig_handler);
```

Here sig\_handler has C calling and naming conventions, so it can be installed as a signal handler into C run-time support.

A direct language specification clause placed after a name of a field, constant, type, or variable points out that the name of the object will be treated according to the rules of the specified language.

```
TYPE
  Rec ["C"] = RECORD
    name ["C"] : INTEGER;
  END;

CONST pi ["C"] = 3.14159;

VAR buffer[][ "C"] : POINTER TO INTEGER;
```

---

<sup>1</sup>We recommend to use strings, integer values are preserved for backward compatibility.

**Note:** In ISO Modula-2, an absolute address may be specified for a variable after its name in square brackets, so the empty brackets are required in the last line.

A procedure name is treated according to the language of its declaration, so in the following declaration:

```
PROCEDURE [ "C" ] Foo;
```

both the procedure type and the procedure name are treated according to the C language rules. **Note:** If you are using a C++ compiler, the `Foo` function should be declared with C name mangling style. Consult your C++ manuals for further information.

## 10.3 Interfacing to C

Special efforts were made in XDS to provide convenient interface to other languages, primarily to the C language. The main goal is to allow direct usage of existing C libraries and APIs in Modula-2/Oberon-2 programs.

### 10.3.1 Foreign definition module

A direct language specification (see [10.2](#)) clause may appear immediately after keywords `DEFINITION MODULE`. The effect is that all objects defined in that module are translated according to the specified language rules, thus making unnecessary direct language specifications for each object.

Several options are often used in foreign definition modules. See [11.8.4](#) for the description of options used to create a foreign definition module.

#### Example

```
<+ M2EXTENSIONS *>
<+ CSTDLIB *>          (* C standard library *)
<+ NOHEADER *>         (* we already have header file *)
DEFINITION MODULE [ "C" ] string;

IMPORT SYSTEM;

PROCEDURE strlen(s: ARRAY OF CHAR): SYSTEM.size_t;
PROCEDURE strcmp(s1: ARRAY OF CHAR;
```

```

                s2: ARRAY OF CHAR): SYSTEM.int;
    END string.

```

Take the following considerations into account when designing your own foreign definition module:

- If you are developing an interface to an existing header file, use the **NO-HEADER** option to disable generation of the header file. This option is meaningful for translators only.
- If the header file is a standard header file, use the **CSTDLIB** option. This option is meaningful for the translators only.
- Use the special **SYSTEM** types `int`, `unsigned`, `size_t`, and `void` for corresponding C types.
- XDS compilers use relaxed type compatibility rules for foreign entities. See [10.4](#) for more information.

Definition modules for ANSI C libraries (`stdio.def`, `string.def`, etc) can be used as tutorial examples.

### 10.3.2 External procedures specification

In some cases, it may be desirable not to write a foreign definition module but to use some C or API functions directly. XDS compilers allow a function to be declared as external.

The declaration of an external procedure consists of a procedure header only. The procedure name in the header is prefixed by the symbol `" / "`.

```
PROCEDURE [ "C" ] / putchar(ch: SYSTEM.int): SYSTEM.int;
```

## 10.4 Relaxation of compatibility rules

The compiler performs all semantic checks for an object or type according to its language specification. Any object declared as that of Modula-2 or Oberon-2 is subject to Modula-2 or Oberon-2 compatibility rules respectively. The compiler uses relaxed compatibility rules for objects and types declared as `"C"`, `"Pascal"`, `"StdCall"`, and `"SysCall"`.

### 10.4.1 Assignment compatibility

Two pointer type objects are considered assignment compatible, if

- they are of the same Modula-2 or Oberon-2 type.
- at least one of their types is declared as "C", "Pascal", "StdCall", or "SysCall", and their *base types* are the same.

```
VAR
  x: POINTER TO T;
  y: POINTER TO T;
  z: POINTER [ "C" ] TO T;
BEGIN
  x := y;          -- error
  y := z;          -- ok
  z := y;          -- ok
```

### 10.4.2 Parameter compatibility

For procedures declared as "C", "Pascal", "StdCall", or "SysCall", the type compatibility rules for parameters are significantly relaxed:

If a formal value parameter is of the type declared as `POINTER TO T`, the actual parameter can be of any of the following types:

- the same type (the only case for regular Modula-2/Oberon-2 procedures);
- another type declared as `POINTER TO T`.
- any array type which elements are of type T. In this case the address of the first array element is passed, as it is done in C.
- the type T itself, if T is a record type. In this case the address of the actual parameter is passed.

If a formal parameter is an open array of type T, the actual parameter can be of any of the following types:

- an (open) array of type T (the only case for regular Modula-2/Oberon-2 procedures);

- type T itself (if **M2EXTENSIONS** or **TOPSPEED** option is set ON);
- any type declared as **POINTER TO T**.

This relaxation, in conjunction with the **SYSTEM.REF** function procedure (see [7.5.2](#)), simplifies Modula-2/Oberon-2 calls to C libraries and the target operating system API, preserving the advantages of the type checking mechanism provided by that languages.

### Example

```

TYPE
  Str = POINTER TO CHAR;
  Rec = RECORD ... END;
  Ptr = POINTER TO Rec;

PROCEDURE ["C"] Foo(s: Str); ... END Foo;
PROCEDURE ["C"] Bar(p: Ptr); ... END Bar;
PROCEDURE ["C"] FooBar(a: ARRAY OF CHAR); ... END FooBar;

VAR
  s: Str;
  a: ARRAY [0..5] OF CHAR;
  p: POINTER TO ARRAY OF CHAR;
  R: Rec;
  A: ARRAY [0..20] OF REC;
  P: POINTER TO REC;

  Foo(s);      (* allowed - the same type *)
  Foo(a);      (* allowed for the "C" procedure *)
  Foo(p^);     (* allowed for the "C" procedure *)
  Bar(R);      (* the same as Bar(SYSTEM.REF(R)); *)
  Bar(A);      (* allowed for the "C" procedure *)
  Bar(P);      (* allowed for the "C" procedure *)
  FooBar(s);   (* allowed for the "C" procedure *)

```

### 10.4.3 Ignoring function result

It is a standard practice in C programming to ignore the result of a function call. Some standard library functions are designed taking that practice into account.

E.g. the string copy function accepts the destination string as a variable parameter (in terms of Modula-2) and returns a pointer to it:

```
extern char *strcpy(char *, const char *);
```

In many cases, the result of the `strcpy` function call is ignored.

In XDS, it is possible to ignore results of functions defined as "C", "Pascal", "StdCall", or "SysCall". Thus, the function `strcpy` defined in the `string.def` foreign definition module as

```
PROCEDURE ["C"] strcpy(VAR d: ARRAY OF CHAR;  
                        s: ARRAY OF CHAR): ADDRESS;
```

can be used as a proper procedure or as function procedure:

```
strcpy(d,s);  
ptr:=strcpy(d,s);
```

# Chapter 11

## Mapping to C

Almost all features of Modula-2 and Oberon-2 have direct equivalents in ANSI C. If some construct is not directly available in C, the most simple and effective solution preserving the language semantics is used.

Many features are implemented in the run-time system. The file `x2c.h` is a C header file of the run-time support library. It contains a set of type definitions, macros and functions necessary for compilation and execution of a translated code.

**Note:** In the examples of a generated C code throughout this appendix some unimportant details may be omitted for simplicity.

### 11.1 Layout of a generated code

The compiler generates the header files and C code files (See also [4.3](#)). A generated header file has the following general layout:

1. a user defined copyright statement (See the **COPYRIGHT** equation)
2. two header lines, including time of compilation, the name of the file, a version of the XDS compiler.
3. `#ifdef <module_name>_H_`
4. a set of "include" directives (always contains "include" directive for the run-time header file `x2c.h`).
5. external declarations

6. #endif

**Note:** External declarations may contain implicitly exported identifiers. E.g. a structure always contains non-exported fields.

For a sample definition module:

```
DEFINITION MODULE MyLib;

PROCEDURE Foo;

END MyLib.
```

the following header file will be produced under on assumption that the **COPYRIGHT** equation is properly set):

```
/* (c) 1994 Widget Databases Ltd */
/* "@(#)MyLib.h Sep 15 12:50:16 1995" */
/* Generated by XDS Modula-2 to ANSI C v3.14 translator */

#ifndef MyLib_H_
#define MyLib_H_
#ifndef X2C_H_
#include "X2C.h"
#endif

extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyLib_Foo(void);

extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyLib_BEGIN(void);

#endif /* MyLib_H_ */
```

A generated C code file has the following general layout:

1. a user defined copyright statement (See the **COPYRIGHT** equation)
2. two header lines, including time of compilation (See the option **GENERATE**), the name of the file, a version of the XDS compiler.
3. definitions of the pre-processor symbols corresponding to the settings of some options (See [11.8.1](#))
4. a set of include directives (for program module it contains "include" directive for the run-time header file X2C.h).



## 5. the generated source text

For the implementation module:

```
IMPLEMENTATION MODULE MyLib;

IMPORT   InOut;

VAR count: INTEGER;

PROCEDURE Foo;
BEGIN
    INC(count);
    InOut.WriteInt(count,0);
    InOut.WriteLine;
END Foo;

BEGIN
    count:=0;
END MyLib.
```

the following code file will be produced:

```
/* (c) 1994 Widget Databases Ltd */
/* "(@(#)MyLib.c Jan 12 12:50:36 1995" */
/* Generated by XDS Modula-2 to ANSI C v3.12 translator */

#define X2C_int32
#define X2C_index32
#ifndef InOut_H_
#include "InOut.h"
#endif
#include "MyLib.h"

static X2C_INT32 count;

extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyLib_Foo(void)
{
    count += 11;
    InOut_WriteInt(count,0ul);
    InOut_WriteLn();
} /* END Foo */
```

```
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyLib_BEGIN(void)
{
    static int MyLib_init=0;
    if (MyLib_init) return;
    MyLib_init=1;
    InOut_BEGIN();
    count=0ul;
}
```

**Note:** for an Oberon module both the header and code files are generated.

## 11.2 Identifiers

The compiler tries to copy identifiers from the source text to the C code without modifications. In some cases it can be necessary to expand an identifier or to reduce it (See also the **GENIDLEN** equation).

**Note:** The compiler does not change identifiers which are marked as C identifiers via the direct language specification facility. See [10.2](#).

All exported identifiers<sup>1</sup> are prefixed by the module name.

If an identifier to be declared is already defined in the C text it is postfixed with a number. It can occur for a various reasons:

1. an identifier coincides with the C keyword or standard identifier.

```
VAR char: CHAR;
```

translates to:

```
X2C_CHAR char1;
```

The compiler uses postfixing for all identifiers listed in the `xm.kwd` file. The file provided by the distribution contains a list of all ANSI C/C++ keywords and some identifiers from the C standard libraries.

One can extend the file with other identifiers. For example, if your program contains (non-exported) identifier `pi` and imports a standard C `math` library, it is necessary to include `pi` into the `xm.kwd` file.

---

<sup>1</sup>Identifiers that are declared in a definition module, or marked as exported in an oberon module.

2. a local identifier coincides with the global one.

```
VAR i: INTEGER;

PROCEDURE Foo;
  VAR i: INTEGER;
BEGIN
  i:=1;
END Foo;
```

translates to:

```
static X2C_INT32 i;

static void Foo(void)
{
  X2C_INT32 i1;
  i1 = 1;
}
```

3. an identifier is exported/imported to/from the context, where such an identifier is already defined. E.g.

```
PROCEDURE Foo; END Foo;

MODULE Local;

EXPORT QUALIFIED Foo;

PROCEDURE Foo; END Foo;

END Local;
```

The compiler does not extend identifiers defined in the local modules with the module name. It will use postfixing to distinguish between two `Foo` procedures.

```
static void Foo(void)
{
}
```

```
static void Foo1(void) /* Local.Foo */
{
}
```

If the length of a generated identifier length is greater than the limit defined by the **GENIDLEN** equation, the compiler will reduce the identifier. Let us consider the definition module:

```
DEFINITION MODULE MyModule;

VAR int: INTEGER;

PROCEDURE proc;

END MyModule.
```

If the limit is large enough (in our case greater than 13), the following declarations will be generated in the header file:

```
extern X2C_INT32 MyModule_int;
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyModule_proc(void);
```

If the **GENIDLEN** equation is set to 6, all identifiers will be reduced:

```
extern X2C_INT32 MyModu;
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyMod1(void);
```

This feature can be used for satisfying the obsolete C compilers or linkers, which imposes strong restrictions on the length of identifiers.

A special naming scheme is used for the identifiers of the functions corresponding to the initialization parts of compilation units (module bodies). If the option **VERSIONKEY** is off, the compiler generates a function identifier of the form:

```
<module_name>_BEGIN
```

For the above example, the initialization part will be declared as

```
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyModule_BEGIN(void);
```

or, if **GENIDLEN**=6, as

```
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyMod2(void);
```

If the option is on, the compiler generates the name of a module body as a composition of

- a module name
- a string `"_BEGIN_"`
- a time stamp
- values of options **TARGET16**, **INDEX16** and **DIFADR16** in the packed form. All modules constituting the project should be compiled with the same values of these options.

If the definition (or Oberon) module imported by different compilation units has the same version, the same name will be generated for each call of the module body. In all other cases unresolved references will occur at a link time.

### Example

```
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyModule_BEGIN_A0FE6691B(void);
```

or, if `GENIDLEN=6`, as

```
extern void X2C_PROCLASS MyMod2_A0FE6691B(void);
```

We recommend to switch ON the option **VERSIONKEY** whenever possible.

## 11.3 Data types

### 11.3.1 Basic types

The correspondence between Modula-2/Oberon-2 basic types and C types is described in the tables 11.1 and 11.2. A representation of system types is described in the table 11.3. **Note:** Subrange types are represented by their host types.

If the option **GENCTYPES** is off, the compiler uses identifiers defined in the run-time module `X2C.h` for all basic types; see the last column of the tables. If the option is on, the compiler generates C type identifiers.

```
VAR ch: CHAR;
```

translates to (**GENCTYPES** is off):

```
X2C_CHAR ch;
```

or, if the option is on, to:

```
char ch;
```

Basic type	Bits	C type	X2C type
SHORTINT	8	signed char	X2C_INT8
INTEGER	16	short	X2C_INT16
INTEGER	32	long	X2C_INT32
LONGINT	32	long	X2C_INT32
SHORTCARD	8	unsigned char	X2C_CARD8
CARDINAL	16	unsigned short	X2C_CARD16
CARDINAL	32	unsigned long	X2C_CARD32
LONGCARD	32	long	X2C_CARD32
REAL	32	float	X2C_REAL
LONGREAL	64	double	X2C_LONGREAL
CHAR	8	unsigned char	X2C_CHAR
BOOLEAN	8	unsigned char	X2C_BOOLEAN
BITSET	16	unsigned short	X2C_SET16
BITSET	32	unsigned long	X2C_SET32

Table 11.1: Representation of Modula-2 basic types

In Modula-2, the size of `INTEGER`, `CARDINAL` and `BITSET` types is controlled via the option **M2BASE16**. If the option is set, `INTEGER` is equal to `SYSTEM.INT16`, `CARDINAL` is equal to `SYSTEM.CARD16` and `BITSET` is defined as `PACKEDSET OF [0..15]`. Otherwise, all these types are 32-bits wide.

### 11.3.2 Special system types

The module `SYSTEM` provides special types `int`, `unsigned`, `size_t` and `void`. A characteristic feature of these types is that they are generated exactly as the corresponding C types, i.e.

Basic type	Bits	C type	X2C type
SHORTINT	8	signed char	X2C_INT8
INTEGER	16	short int	X2C_INT16
LONGINT	32	long int	X2C_INT32
REAL	32	float	X2C_REAL
LONGREAL	64	double	X2C_LONGREAL
CHAR	8	unsigned char	X2C_CHAR
BOOLEAN	8	unsigned char	X2C_BOOLEAN
SET	32	unsigned long	X2C_SET32

Table 11.2: Representation of Oberon-2 basic types

System type	Bits	C type	X2C type
INT8	8	signed char	X2C_INT8
INT16	16	short int	X2C_INT16
INT32	32	long	X2C_INT32
CARD8	8	unsigned char	X2C_CARD8
CARD16	16	unsigned short	X2C_CARD16
CARD32	32	unsigned long	X2C_CARD32
LOC	8	char	X2C_LOC
BYTE	8	char	X2C_LOC
WORD	32	array of LOC	X2C_WORD
ADDRESS	32	pointer to LOC	X2C_ADDRESS

Table 11.3: Representation of SYSTEM types

```
VAR
  x: SYSTEM.size_t;
  y: SYSTEM.int;
  z: POINTER TO SYSTEM.void;
```

translates to

```
size_t x;
int y;
void * z;
```

The types should be used in the foreign definition modules (See [10.3](#)).

### 11.3.3 Modula-2 enumeration types

An enumeration type is translated to the C enum declaration.

```
TYPE color = (red,green,blue);
```

translates to:

```
enum color {red,green,blue};
```

or, if the option **GENTYPEDEF** is set to:

```
enum color {red,green,blue};
typedef enum color color;
```

### 11.3.4 Modula-2 set types

Modula-2 sets which have not more than 32 elements are represented as unsigned types of appropriate length. Large sets are declared as array of words.

```
TYPE
  SmallSet = SET OF [-1..1];
  Set16    = SET OF [0..15];
  LongSet  = SET OF [-1..32];
```

translates to:



```
typedef X2C_SET8 SmallSet;
typedef X2C_SET16 Set16;
typedef X2C_CARD32 Long[2];
```

### 11.3.5 Record types

A record is translated into a C struct.

TYPE

```
R = RECORD
  b: BOOLEAN;
  c: CHAR;
END;
```

translates to:

```
struct R {
  X2C_BOOLEAN b;
  X2C_CHAR c;
};
```

If the option **GENTYPEDEF** is set, the compiler will generate the typedef declaration including both *tag name* and *type name*.

```
struct R;
typedef struct R R;
struct R {
  X2C_BOOLEAN b;
  X2C_CHAR c;
};
```

The tag names are needed for the recursive structure declarations (See the next section).

A dummy field is generated for an empty record, since the C compilers treat an empty structure as an error:

```
struct R {
  X2C_INT32 _dummy_;
}
```

A variant part is translated to a C union.

```
R = RECORD
  CASE tag: BOOLEAN OF
    | TRUE : c: CHAR;
    | FALSE: b: BOOLEAN;
  END;
  set: BITSET;
END;
```

is translated to:

```
struct R {
  X2C_BOOLEAN tag;
  union {
    struct {
      X2C_CHAR c;
    } _1;
    struct {
      X2C_BOOLEAN b;
    } _2;
  } _;
  X2C_SET32 set;
};
```

An access to a field of a variant part ( $r$  is of type  $R$ )

```
r.c := 'a' ;
```

is translated to:

```
r._._1.c := 'a' ;
```

### 11.3.6 Pointer types

A pointer type is mapped to the corresponding C type.

```
P = POINTER TO R;
R = RECORD
  next: P;
END;
```

is translated to:

```
struct R;
typedef struct R *P;
struct R {
    P next;
};
```

Pointer types are often used in a declaration of recursive data structures. In C, a recursive data structure must contain at least one `struct` declaration. The compiler reports an error if detects a recursive data type without at least one record type, e.g.:

```
T = POINTER TO T;
```

This limitation should not cause any problems since data structures that constitutes of pointers only are quite artificial.

A special case is a pointer to an open array (See [11.3.7](#)).

### 11.3.7 Dynamic arrays

A dynamic array type<sup>2</sup> is represented as a pointer to a descriptor of an open array. For an  $N$ -dimensional open array, the descriptor contains:

- a pointer to the array body;
- for each of  $N - 1$  higher dimensions:
  - a length of an array in this dimension;
  - a size of array element in this dimension;
- an array length of the last dimension.

#### Example

```
TYPE
    String = POINTER TO ARRAY OF CHAR;
    Matrix = POINTER TO ARRAY OF ARRAY OF REAL;
```

---

<sup>2</sup>Pointer to a (multidimensional) open array.

is translated to:

```

struct _0;
typedef struct _0 * String;

struct _0 {
    X2C_CHAR * Adr; /* pointer to an array body */
    X2C_INDEX Len0;
};

struct _1;
typedef struct _1 * Matrix;

struct _1 {
    X2C_REAL * Adr; /* pointer to an array body */
    X2C_INDEX Len0; /* length of the 1st dimension */
    X2C_INDEX Size1;
    X2C_INDEX Len1; /* length of the 2nd dimension */
};

```

If  $m$  is of type `Matrix` then the call `NEW(m, 3, 5)` will set the following values:

```

Len0    5    a length of the inner dimension
Len1    3    a length of the outer dimension
Size1   20   5 × 4, if sizeof(REAL)=4

```

## 11.4 Procedure declarations

A Modula-2/Oberon-2 procedure is translated to a C function. A special case is translation of a nested procedure (See [11.4.7](#)). A generated function prototype includes call of the `X2C_PROCLASS` macro, if the **GENPROCLASS** option is ON.

Regardless of the **GENPROCLASS** setting, function prototypes corresponding to foreign procedures contains the following macro call:

DLS string	Macro name
"C"	none
"Pascal"	X2C_PASCAL
"StdCall"	X2C_STDCALL
"SysCall"	X2C_SYSCALL

A list of parameters is generated according to the value of the **GENKRC** option (See 11.8.2). If **GENKRC** is ON, the compiler generates parameter names only, otherwise the compiler generates full function prototype.

### 11.4.1 Parameters

The parameter passing convention conforms, whenever possible, to the rules of the C language. Variable parameters are declared as pointers to the formal parameter type. Exceptions are parameters of array and large set types which are always passed by reference.

The procedure header

```
PROCEDURE Foo(a: INTEGER;
              VAR b: INTEGER;
              c: Array;
              VAR d: Array);
```

is translated to:

```
void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(X2C_INT32 a,
                     X2C_INT32 *b,
                     Array c,
                     Array d)
```

In the case of value arrays and long sets, the procedure called is responsible for making a local copy.

```
TYPE Vector = ARRAY [0..2] OF REAL;
```

```
PROCEDURE Foo(v: Vector);
BEGIN
  <statements>
END Foo;
```

is translated to:

```
typedef X2C_REAL Vector[3];

static void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(Vector v)
```

```

{
    V tmp;
    v = (X2C_REAL *)memcpy(tmp,v2,sizeof(V));
    <statements>
} /* END Foo */

```

A special case is a character array parameter of a fixed size. A string literal can be passed as an actual parameter for a such formal parameter. A string literal can be shorter than the formal parameter and a special care must be taken not to access memory location beyond the end of the actual parameter. The compiler copies a string literal to a temporary variable in the caller procedure. Then in the callee procedure, the parameter will be copied again according to the standard rules. **Note:** in some cases this double copying may be prevented by marking the parameter as read-only (See [7.6.8](#)).

```
TYPE Str = ARRAY [0..7] OF CHAR;
```

```
PROCEDURE Foo(s: Str);
END Foo;
```

```
PROCEDURE Callee;
BEGIN
    Foo("hello");
END Callee;
```

is translated to:

```
typedef X2C_CHAR Str[8];

static void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(Str s)
{
    A tmp;
    s=(X2C_CHAR *)memcpy(tmp,s,8u);
} /* END Foo */

static void X2C_PROCLASS Callee(void)
{
    Str tmp;
    Foo(*(Str *)memcpy(&tmp,"hello",6u));
} /* END Callee */

```

### 11.4.2 Open arrays

Parameters of an open array are generated according to the following rules:

- for a  $N$ -dimensional open array  $N$  additional parameters (a length of each dimension) are passed.
- if the parameter is a value parameter, the space necessary for the local copy is allocated at a run-time. The allocated memory is free before the function termination.

```
PROCEDURE Foo(s: ARRAY OF ARRAY OF CHAR);
BEGIN
    <statements>
END Foo;
```

```
PROCEDURE Callee;
    VAR x: ARRAY [0..1],[0..1] OF CHAR;
BEGIN
    Foo(x);
END Callee;
```

is translated to:

```
static void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(X2C_CHAR s[],
                             X2C_CARD32 s_len,
                             X2C_CARD32 s_len1)
{
    X2C_PCOPY((void **)&s,s_len*s_len1);
    <statements>
    X2C_PFREE(s,s_len*s_len1);
} /* END Foo */

static void X2C_PROCLASS Callee(void)
{
    X2C_CHAR x[2][2];
    Foo((X2C_CHAR *)x, 2u, 2u);
} /* END Callee */
```

### 11.4.3 Oberon-2 variable record parameters

For a variable record parameter in Oberon-2 an additional parameter (*type tag*) is passed. This parameter is needed for the dynamic type tests and for calling the type-bound procedures (See also [11.6](#)).

```
PROCEDURE Foo(VAR r: Rec);
```

is translated to:

```
static void proc(struct Rec * r, X2C_TD r_type);
```

### 11.4.4 Sequence parameters

For the sequence parameters, the compiler forms the byte array explicitly as a dynamic aggregate, according to the rules specified in [7.6.9](#).

```
PROCEDURE write(SEQ x: SYSTEM.BYTE);
END write;
```

```
PROCEDURE Foo;
  VAR
    i: INTEGER;
    c: CHAR;
    r: REAL;
    a: ARRAY [0..7] OF CHAR;
BEGIN
  write(i,c,r,a);
END Foo;
```

is translated to:

```
static void X2C_PROCLASS write(X2C_LOC x[],
                               X2C_CARD32 x_len)
{
} /* END write */

static void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(void)
  X2C_INT32 i;
  X2C_CHAR c;
```



```

X2C_REAL r;
X2C_CHAR a[8];
X2C_SEQ tmp[7];
write(
    (tmp[0].val=i,
    tmp[1].val=(X2C_CARD32)c,
    *(X2C_LONGREAL*)&tmp[2]=(X2C_LONGREAL)r,
    tmp[4].adr=a,
    tmp[5].val=0,
    tmp[6].val=7,
    (X2C_LOC *)tmp),
    28u);
} /* END Foo */

```

For this call, the actual array passed to `write` will contain:

- 4 bytes of a sign-extended value of `i`
- 4 bytes of a zero-extended value of `c`
- 8 bytes of a `LONGREAL` value `r`
- 12 bytes of an array descriptor
  - 4 bytes containing the address of `a`
  - 4 bytes containing the value 0
  - 4 bytes containing the value 7 (`SIZE(a)-1`)

### 11.4.5 Function results

XDS supports arbitrary return types for functions. If a function returns an array or a large set type, an additional parameter is declared. It is used as a pointer to a temporary variable receiving the result of function.

```
TYPE A = ARRAY [0..1] OF REAL;
```

```

PROCEDURE Foo(): A;
  VAR a: A;
BEGIN
  RETURN a

```

```

END Foo;

PROCEDURE Callee;
  VAR x: A;
BEGIN
  x:=Foo();
END Callee;

```

is translated to:

```

typedef X2C_REAL A[2];

static X2C_REAL * X2C_PROCLASS Foo(A Foo_ret)
{
  A a1;
  memcpy(Foo_ret,a1,sizeof(A));
  return Foo_ret;
} /* END Foo */

static void X2C_PROCLASS Callee(void)
{
  A x;
  A tmp;
  memcpy(x,Foo(tmp),sizeof(A));
} /* END Callee */

```

#### 11.4.6 Procedure body

In most cases the translation of a procedure body is transparent. Most statements of the source languages have direct analog in C. However, in some cases a special care must be taken to preserve the language semantics.

The following example illustrates the situation where `return` statements are replaced with `goto` to free the memory allocated for a parameter.

```

PROCEDURE Length(s: ARRAY OF CHAR): CARDINAL;
  VAR i: CARDINAL;
BEGIN
  i:=0;
  WHILE i<HIGH(s) DO

```

```

        IF s[i]=0C THEN RETURN i END;
        INC(i)
    END;
    RETURN i
END Length;

```

is translated to:

```

static X2C_CARD32 Length(X2C_CHAR s[],
                        X2C_CARD32 s_len)
{
    X2C_CARD32 i;
    X2C_CARD32 Length_ret;
    X2C_PCOPY((void **)&s,s_len);
    i = 0;
    while (i<s_len-1) {
        if (s[i]=='\0') {
            Length_ret=i;
            goto label;
        }
        i += 1;
    } /* END WHILE */
    Length_ret=i;
label:;
    X2C_PFREE(s,s_len);
    return Length_ret;
} /* END Length */

```

If a procedure contains local modules, its initialization and finalization parts (See [7.2.12](#)) are inserted into the appropriate places:

```

VAR Foo_in_operation: BOOLEAN;

PROCEDURE Foo(): INTEGER;
    MODULE M;
        IMPORT Foo_in_operation;
    BEGIN
        Foo_in_operation:=TRUE;
    FINALLY
        Foo_in_operation:=FALSE;
    END M;

```

```
BEGIN
  RETURN 1
END Foo;
```

is translated to:

```
static X2C_BOOLEAN Foo_in_operation;

static X2C_INT32 Foo(void)
{
  X2C_INT32 Foo_ret;
  Foo_in_operation=1; /* M initialization */
  Foo_ret=0x011;
  Foo_in_operation=0; /* M finalization */
  return Foo_ret;
} /* END Foo */
```

If a procedure contains an exceptional part (See [7.2.13](#)), the procedure body is generated as `if` statement, where one branch corresponds to a normal part, and another to an exceptional part. The calls of run-time functions are generated to provide all necessary actions. The finalization statements (if any) are generated after the `if` statement.

```
PROCEDURE Div(a,b: INTEGER): INTEGER;
BEGIN
  RETURN a DIV b
EXCEPT
  RETURN MAX(INTEGER)
END Div;
```

is translated to:

```
static X2C_INT32 Div(X2C_INT32 a, X2C_INT32 b)
{
  X2C_XHandler_STR tmp;
  X2C_INT32 Div_ret;
  if (X2C_XTRY(&tmp)) {
    Div_ret = X2C_DIV(a,b);
    X2C_XOFF();
  }
}
```

```

    else {
        Div_ret=X2C_max_longcard;
    }
    X2C_XREMOVE();
    return Div_ret;
} /* END Div */

```

### 11.4.7 Nested procedures

There is no equivalent for Modula-2/Oberon-2 nested procedures in C. The compiler appends additional parameters to make an access to the local variables (and parameters) of an outer procedure(s).

#### Example

```

PROCEDURE proc(a: INTEGER);
    VAR b,c,d: INTEGER;

    PROCEDURE loc1(a: INTEGER);
    BEGIN
        b:=a;
    END loc1;

    PROCEDURE loc2;
    BEGIN
        loc1(d+a);
    END loc2;

BEGIN
    c:=1;
    loc2;
END proc;

```

is translated to:

```

static void loc1(X2C_INT32 * b, X2C_INT32 a)
{
    *b=a;
} /* END loc1 */

```

```

static void loc2(X2C_INT32 * b,
                X2C_INT32 * a,
                X2C_INT32 * d)
{
    loc1(b, *d+*a);
} /* END loc2 */

static void X2C_PROCLASS proc(X2C_INT32 a)
{
    X2C_INT32 c;
    X2C_INT32 b;
    X2C_INT32 d;
    c=0x011;
    loc2(&b, &a, &d);
} /* END proc */

```

**Note:** Only the used variables are passed as additional parameters (e.g. the variable `c` is not used and not passed).

## 11.5 Module initialization and finalization

For each compilation unit the compiler generates the initialization function which contains the necessary initialization statements and statements constituting the module body. Initialization statements include the call of initialization functions of all imported modules. Two forms of an identifier of an initialization function are controlled by the **VERSIONKEY** option.

If the module body contains a finalization part (See [7.2.12](#)) this part is generated as a separate procedure, and the run-time support procedure is called to register it.

### Example

```

IMPLEMENTATION MODULE M;

IMPORT  A, B;

BEGIN
    A.Foo( );

```

```

FINALLY
  B.Foo();
END M.

```

is translated to (**VERSIONKEY** is OFF; the module header is omitted):

```

static void final(void)
/* finalization part */
{
  B_Foo();
} /* END */

void M_BEGIN(void)
{
  static int M_init=0;
  if (M_init) return;
  M_init=1;
  A_BEGIN();           /* initialize A */
  B_BEGIN();           /* initialize B */
  X2C_FINALLY(final);  /* register FINALLY */
  A_Foo();             /* M initialization */
}

```

Each module initialization is executed only once (See the first three lines in `M_BEGIN`). Imported compilation units are initialized before the body of the module.

For a program module (or an Oberon-2 module marked with the **MAIN** option) the compiler uses the identifier `main` as the name of module body, and the `main` function contains a call of `X2C_INIT` to initialize run-time system.

## 11.6 Oberon-2 object-oriented features

The compiler uses the standard scheme to implement object-oriented features in Oberon-2. A dynamic type of records is needed for type tests and a table of type-bound procedures (methods or virtual functions) is needed to call them. A type descriptor containing all necessary information is created for an Oberon-2 record (See [11.7](#)).

A C structure corresponding to an Oberon-2 record does not contain any additional

fields<sup>3</sup> since, for variables of a record type, the dynamic type is statically known to the compiler. A dynamic type of an object  $v$  may differ from a static one only if  $v$  is a variable parameter of a record type or  $v$  is a pointer. For a variable parameter of a record type an additional parameter (*type tag* or a pointer to type descriptor) is passed (See 11.4.3).

For a dynamically allocated record, a type tag (and possibly some other information) is stored before the actual record data and is invisible to a programmer.

An extended record directly contains the fields of all the base types.

```

TYPE
  Node = POINTER TO NodeDesc;
  NodeDesc = RECORD
    next: Node;
  END;
  IntNodeDesc = RECORD (NodeDesc)
    val: INTEGER;
  END;

```

is translated to:

```

struct NodeDesc;
typedef struct NodeDesc * Node;

struct x_NodeDesc {
  Node next;
};

struct x_IntNodeDesc {
  Node next;
  X2C_INT16 val;
};

```

A type-bound procedure is translated to a function which prototype includes both a receiver parameter (two parameters if receiver is a variable record parameter) and normal parameters.

```

PROCEDURE (n: Node) Print;
END Print;

```

---

<sup>3</sup>Unlike the previous XDS release.



is translated to a function declaration and the corresponding function type:

```
typedef void (X2C_PROCLASS *Print_)(Node);

static void X2C_PROCLASS Print(Node n)
{
} /* END Print */
```

The call of type-bound procedure is made via a table of methods (node is of type Node).

```
node.Print;
```

is translated to the call of run-time macro:

```
X2C_CALL(Print_, X2C_GET_TD(node), 0)(node);
```

X2C\_CALL macro evaluates a procedure to call; X2C\_GET\_TD function returns type tag; Print\_ is the function type and 0 is the ordinal number of the Print method.

## 11.7 Oberon-2 run-time data structures

Certain information about an Oberon-2 module must be available at run-time. This information is provided in the form of type descriptors (for each record type) and a module descriptor.

A type descriptor contains an information necessary for:

- dynamic type tests and type guards (type descriptors of all base records);
- calling type-bound procedures (a method table);
- garbage collection (location of pointers in records and arrays).

The run-time system provides a set of pre-defined descriptors, that are used for dynamically allocated arrays (including dynamic arrays).

A module descriptor contains an information necessary for garbage collection (the locations of all global pointers) and meta-language programming.

**Example**

```

MODULE x;

TYPE
  Node = POINTER TO NodeDesc;
  NodeDesc = RECORD
    next: Node;
  END;
  IntNode = POINTER TO IntNodeDesc;
  IntNodeDesc = RECORD (NodeDesc)
    val: INTEGER;
  END;

VAR root: Node; (* global pointer *)

PROCEDURE (n: Node) Print;
END Print;

PROCEDURE (n: IntNode) Print;
END Print;

PROCEDURE (n: IntNode) Foo;
END Foo;

END x.

```

The following data structure will be created for the above example (type descriptor of NodeDesc and some details are omitted, comments are added by hand):

```

/* Module descriptor: */
static void * x_offs[]={ &root,X2C_OFS_END };
static X2C_MD_REC x_desc={
  0,"x",x_offs
};

/* IntNodeDesc type descriptor: */

/* location of pointers (IntNodeDesc): */
static void * x_IntNodeDesc_offs[]={
  X2C_OFS(struct x_IntNodeDesc,next),

```

```

        X2C_OFS_END };

/* method table: */
static X2C_PROC x_IntNodeDesc_proc[] = {
    (X2C_PROC) Print1
    (X2C_PROC) Foo };

/* IntNodeDesc type descriptor: */
extern X2C_TD_REC x_IntNodeDesc_desc = {
    sizeof(struct x_IntNodeDesc),
    "IntNodeDesc",
    &x_desc,
    0, 1, 1,
    /* base type descriptors */
    { &x_NodeDesc_desc, &x_IntNodeDesc_desc,
      0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 },
    x_IntNodeDesc_proc, /* method table */
    x_IntNodeDesc_offs /* pointer locations */
};

```

## 11.8 Options

This section describes the options that affect the generated C code. Some of the options must remain the same for all modules that belong to the same program (See [11.8.1](#)).

### 11.8.1 Describing platform

The XDS compilers generate a highly portable ANSI C code. However, to get correct program one must appropriately describe target platform configuration (or a C compiler) by using the following options (all options are OFF by default):

#### TARGET16

The option must be set for 16-bit platform. If the option is ON, the compiler will assume the C `int` type is 16 bits wide. **Note:** different settings may be required for different C compilers; consult your C compiler manual.

**INDEX16**

The option defines a size of an index and the maximum size of an array or structure on the target platform. If the option is ON, the compiler will assume that an index is 16 bits wide, otherwise 32 bits wide.

**DIFADR16**

The option defines a difference between addresses on the target platform. If the option is ON, the compiler assumes that the difference is a 16-bit integer value, otherwise a 32-bit integer value.

The correct setting of the option is required to implement ADDADR, SUBADR and DIFADR system functions.

These options must have the same settings for all the modules of a program. **Note:** the compiler inserts a definition of the corresponding macros in the C code file.

```
#define X2C_int32      /* target 32 */
#define X2C_index32   /* index 32 */
```

If the VERSIONKEY option is set, an identifier of an initialization function contains settings of these options in a packed form.

**11.8.2 Code generation****Improving readability**

By default the compiler performs a set of optimizations, including constant expression evaluation, constant propagation, etc. In the expressions it generates constant values, not constant names.

If you are using XDS as a translator, we recommend to set the option **NOOPTIMIZE** ON. In this case, the compiler generates constant names whenever possible.

**Generate C types**

The **GENCTYPES** option forces the compiler to use C type identifiers instead of the identifiers, defined in X2C.h, see tables 11.1, 11.2 and 11.3 on page 188.

**Note:** Modula-2 INTEGER, CARDINAL and BITSET types are translated according to the value of the **M2BASE16** option. In spite of the option setting, the compiler generates the identifiers from X2C.h for the following types:

Source type	X2C type
WORD	X2C_WORD
ADDRESS	X2C_ADDRESS
PROC	X2C_PROC
COMPLEX	X2C_COMPLEX
LONGCOMPLEX	X2C_LONGCOMPLEX

### Debug mode

The **GENDEBUG** option should be set to compile your program in the debug mode. If your program is compiled in this mode, the run-time system will print a stack of procedure calls (a file name and a line number) on abnormal termination of your program.

### Example

```
<+ GENDEBUG *>
MODULE test;

PROCEDURE Div(a,b: INTEGER): INTEGER;
BEGIN
    RETURN a DIV b
END Div;

PROCEDURE Try;
    VAR res: INTEGER;
BEGIN
    res:=Div(1,0);
END Try;

BEGIN
    Try;
END test.
```

When this program is running, the exception is raised and the run-time system prints the exception location and a stack of procedure calls. If the option **LINENO** is ON, all information will be reported in terms of original (Oberon-2/Modula-2) source files:

```
#RTS: No exception handler #6: zero or negative divisor.
```

```
test.mod          6
test.mod          12
test.mod          16
```

The exception was raised in line 6 of `test.mod`, the `Div` procedure was called from line 12, while the `Try` procedure was called from line 16 (module body).

If the option **LINENO** is OFF, all information will be reported in terms of generated C files:

```
#RTS: No exception handler #6: zero or negative divisor.
test.c          17
test.c          27
test.c          36
```

In the debug mode the compiler inserts additional calls in the generated C code (some parts of code unimportant for this example are omitted):

```
#define X2C_DEBUG

static long X2C_PROCLASS Div(long a, long b)
{
    long Div_ret;
    X2C_PROC_INP();
    Div_ret=X2C_DIV(a,b);
    X2C_PROC_OUT();
    return Div_ret;
} /* END Div */

static void X2C_PROCLASS Try(void)
{
    long res;
    X2C_PROC_INP();
    res = (X2C_SET_HINFO() Div(11, 01));
    X2C_PROC_OUT();
} /* END Try */
```

As can be seen from the above example, the compiler

1. inserts the `#define X2C_DEBUG` line in the module header. This definition switches all macros, defined in `X2C.h` run-time library, into the debug mode.

2. generates calls of `X2C_PROC_INP` and `X2C_PROC_OUT` into each procedure declaration.
3. inserts `X2C_SET_HINFO` macro (set history information) into each procedure call.

**Important notes:**

- If not all modules of the program are compiled in the debug mode, the stack of procedure calls may be incomplete. The XDS distribution contains libraries compiled in the debug mode. We recommend to use these libraries when debugging your program.
- The XDS run-time system supports 64 levels of procedure calls. If this limit is exceeded, XDS will show only the first 64 procedure calls.
- Switching the option `ON` will significantly increase the size of your program and slow it down.

**Profile mode**

If the option **GENPROFILE** is set `ON`, the compiler generates additional code to provide a profile of the program. At the end of a program execution the run-time system will print the profile of the program to standard output. For each procedure in the program the output includes:

- the name of procedure;
- the number of calls;
- the time of procedure execution, including all internal calls;
- the time of procedure execution, excluding all calls.

The option may be not implemented for all platforms. See your on-line documentation.

**Generate K&R C**

The option **GENKRC** forces the compiler to generate K&R C instead of ANSI C. If the option is `ON`, the procedure declaration

```
PROCEDURE Foo(a,b: INTEGER);
BEGIN
    ...
END Foo.
```

is translated to:

```
static void X2C_PROCLASS Foo(a, b)
    X2C_INT32 a;
    X2C_INT32 b;
{
    ...
} /* END Foo */
```

By default the option is OFF and XDS generates the ANSI C code.

### Generate C++

The option **GENCPP** forces the compiler to generate C++ instead of ANSI C. In the current release there are only few differences between generated ANSI C and C++ code. In the future versions we will use specific C++ features to improve readability and efficiency of generated code.

### Procedure class specification

The option **GENPROCLASS** forces the compiler to insert special macro `X2C_PROCLASS` into all function prototypes.

This macro can be used as a specifier of a function class, e.g. it can be set to `pascal` to change parameter passing convention. For many platforms, this macro cannot be used in a meaningful way. In such cases, we recommend to set the option OFF to make the generated code more readable.

### Generate typedef

The option **GENTYPEDEF** specifies the generation of a record, enumerations and dynamic arrays. If the option is OFF, the compiler generates only tag names in the corresponding C constructs.



```
struct Rec {...};
enum Color {...};
```

If the option is ON, the compiler generates both tag names and type names, using `typedef`.

```
struct Rec {...};
typedef struct Rec Rec;
enum Color {...};
typedef enum Color Color;
```

The option is essential in the development of an interface to a foreign library. An inline usage of the option is recommended in such cases. The following examples (from `stdio.h` and `time.h` illustrate inline usage.

From the interface to `stdio.h`:

```
TYPE
<* PUSH *> <* GENTYPEDEF+ *>
    FILE = RECORD END;
<* POP *>
```

The option shall be ON, since `FILE` is usually defined as

```
typedef struct {...} FILE;
```

Vice versa, we have to switch the option OFF, when defining the interface to `time.h`:

```
TYPE
<* PUSH *> <* GENTYPEDEF- *>
    tm = RECORD
        ...
    END;
<* POP *>
```

since it is defined as

```
struct tm {...};
```

### Version key

The **VERSIONKEY** option specifies the generation of an identifier for an initialization function. The option is introduced to perform version checks at a link time. If the symbol file (corresponding to a definition or Oberon module) has the same version, the same names will be generated for the calls of initialization functions. If the name of an actual initialization function and the name of the called function does not match the linker will report the unresolved reference error. It means that the program must be recompiled in the right order using MAKE or PROJECT operation mode (See Chapter 4).

**Note:** the option should be set when a definition or an Oberon module is compiled. See also [11.2](#) for further details.

### The length of identifiers

The **GENIDLEN** sets the maximum length of an identifier in the generated code.

**Note:** the identifier's length cannot be less than 6 characters. The small value leads to more compact but non-readable text. See also [11.2](#).

## 11.8.3 Evaluating size of types

The programmers are used to the fact that the sizes of types are known at the compilation time, i.e. one can write

```
TYPE Rec = RECORD ... END;
```

```
CONST Size = SIZE(Rec);
```

The portable nature of XDS compilers makes an evaluation of sizes at constant times somewhat tricky. Different C compilers on different platforms may use various alignment algorithms, not mentioning that the base types may have different sizes.

To generate a portable code, the XDS compilers do not allow (in default mode) the call of SIZE and TSIZE functions to be used in constant expressions. E.g. one can write

```
size:=SIZE(Rec);
```

but not

```
CONST Size = SIZE(Rec);
```

In most cases, it is not an essential restriction, since

- a use of the size of a type is rare in high-level programming;
- if a constant like `Size` is not used itself in a constant expression it can be replaced by a variable initialized in the module body.

However, both Modula-2 and Oberon-2 languages can be used in the low-level programming and it can be desirable to know a size of a type in compilation time, in spite of a potential non-portability of a program.

If the **GENSIZE** option is set ON, the compiler will calculate sizes of types using the value of the **ALIGNMENT** equation.

You have to consult with your C compiler guide to set the proper value of the equation. To prevent that inappropriate setting, the compiler generates checks in the module initialization function.

```
if (sizeof(Rec) != 4) X2C_TRAP(X2C_ASSERT_TRAP);
```

An exception will be reported at a run-time<sup>4</sup> if the size evaluated by the XDS compiler is not equal to those evaluated by the C compiler.

### 11.8.4 Foreign language interface

Certain options are introduced to specify an interface to foreign languages, namely **NOHEADER**, **NOEXTERN** and **CSTDLIB**. See also the **GENTYPEDEF** option (11.8.2) which is often used for providing a correct foreign language interface.

#### Disable header file

The **NOHEADER** option disables the generation of a header file. The option is usually specified in the foreign definition module to force the C compiler to use the original header files (See also 10.3).

---

<sup>4</sup>During the program initialization.

### Disable function prototype

In some cases it may be desirable not to write a foreign definition module but to use a few C functions directly. The XDS compilers allow a C function to be declared as external:

```
PROCEDURE [2] / putchar(c: CHAR);
```

The symbol "/" marks a procedure as external. Only procedure header must be specified for an external procedure. After the declaration the external procedure can be used as usual:

```
    putchar('a');
```

A function defined as external can be implemented as macro, or have some additional specifications in its prototype. The **NOEXTERN** option prevents the compiler from generating a function's prototype. In this case, a C compiler will use an original prototype (if available).

### Mark C interface library

The **CSTDLIB** option must be set when compiling a foreign definition module, otherwise the option is ignored. For the foreign definition marked as **CSTDLIB**, the compiler will use angle brackets <> in the `#include` directive. Otherwise the compiler will use quotes.

### Example

```
<+ CSTDLIB *> <+ NOHEADER *>
DEFINITION MODULE stdio;
...
END stdio.

MODULE Test;

IMPORT  stdio, MyLib;

END Test.
```

The import section of the module `Test` is translated to:

```
#include <stdio.h>
#include "MyLib.h"
```

### 11.8.5 Code presentation

In this section we describe options that do not affect the program execution, but the C code representation.

#### Insert line numbers

The **LINENO** option forces the compiler to insert line number information into the generated C code in the form of `#line` directives.

#### Example

```
PROCEDURE Foo(i: INTEGER): INTEGER;
BEGIN
    i:=i*i;
    i:=i+i;
    RETURN i
END Foo;
```

translate to:

```
#line 2
static X2C_INT32 X2C_PROCLASS Foo(X2C_INT32 i)
{
    #line 4
    i=i*i;
    #line 5
    i=i+i;
    #line 6
    return i;
} /* END Foo */
```

#### Copy comments

The **COMMENT** option forces the compiler to copy the original file comments into the generated C code.

If the option is ON, the compiler copies comments to an appropriate place in the generated C code. Comments from an Oberon-2 module are only inserted into the C code file and not into the header file.

### Insert copyright message

The **COPYRIGHT** equation can be used for inserting a single line comment to the very beginning of the generated code or header file. E.g., including the line

```
-copyright = (c) 1995 Widget Databases Ltd
```

to **xm.cfg** will cause the following line to appear at the head of the generated C text

```
/* (c) 1995 Widget Databases Ltd */
```

See also an example in [11.1](#).

### Convert header file names

The **CONVHDRNAME** option forces the compiler to use a file name in the `#include` directive, according to the given file system. Otherwise the compiler will generate a module name postfixed by the header file extension. E.g., the include directive for the module `MyLibrary` will be generated under OS/2 as

```
#include "MYLIBRAR.H"
```

The option may be necessary if source text resides on a FAT partition.

### Set line width

The **GENWIDTH** equation sets the length of a line in the generated code (by default it is equal to 78). **Note:** the compiler splits a line in an appropriate place, when its length exceeds the limit.

# Chapter 12

## Possible Problems

### 12.1 Warnings from C compiler

The produced C text should contain no errors, but various C compilers may produce different kinds of warnings. The most probable warnings are:

- Code has no effect;
- Variable (or parameter) is never used;
- Function should return a value.

Do not pay attention to these warnings.

### 12.2 Ordering of record fields

Some procedures from the run-time library are implemented under the assumption that the C compiler will not change the order of record fields. If your C compiler supports various ordering of structs please ensure that the appropriate C compiler option is switched ON.

### 12.3 Name collisions in C text

In some cases name collisions in generated C text are possible. If an identifier in your program coincides with an identifier from some standard header file append

it to the **xm.kwd** file.

Some basic C compilers (or linkers) might truncate the names or external names. Use the **GENIDLEN** equation to generate identifiers of required length. See [11.2](#) for further information.



# Chapter 13

## Using the Win32 API

This chapter contains a short description of the Win32 API usage in your Modula-2/Oberon-2 programs.

### 13.1 Obtaining API documentation

Your XDS package includes the Win32 API definition modules and the import library, but no documentation on the API. You have to use third-party books or the on-line documentation from the Microsoft Win32 SDK, which is available on Microsoft Developer Network CD-ROMs and along with some C compilers, for instance, Microsoft Visual C++ or Watcom.

Unfortunately, we can not afford licensing the API reference from Microsoft for adapting it to Modula-2 and distributing with XDS. We regret the inconvenience.

### 13.2 Using the Win32 API in your programs

The base Win32 API is collected in about 20 definition modules residing in the DEF\WIN32 subdirectory of your XDS installation. There is also an utility which merges these modules, except the module `CommCtrl`, into the single module `Windows` during installation. The installation program also invokes the compiler to build the symbol files for all Win32 API modules. To rebuild all these files anytime later, change directory to `xxx\DEF\WIN32`, where `xxx` is your XDS installation directory, and issue the following commands:

```
build\merge          to rebuild Windows.def
```

```
xm =p =a windef.prj    to rebuild Win32 API symbol files
```

If you are just studying the Win32 API using SDK references or a third party book, use the `Windows` module. Otherwise, you may wish to use separate modules.

### 13.2.1 `Windows.def`: merged versus reexporting

In versions prior to 2.31, you had to use either the merged module `Windows` or the separate modules, but not both simultaneously, throughout all modules of your program, to avoid compatibility problems. Starting from version 2.31, it is possible to build the `Windows.def` file as a set of "reexport" declarations, such as:

```
TYPE ULONG = WinDef.ULONG;
CONST GetFileType = WinBase.GetFileType;
```

This approach, proposed by Victor Sergeev, removes the restriction on simultaneous usage of `Windows.def` and other Win32 API definition modules that resulted from compatibility problems.

To rebuild the `Windows.def` file using this method, issue the following command instead of `build\merge`:

```
build\reexport
```

**Note:** As the new `Windows.sym` file is about 10 percent larger, you may need to increase the **COMPILERHEAP** equation value in the compiler configuration file.

You may switch between the old "merge" and the new "reexport" approaches to `Windows.def` creation at any time, but note that the `CommCtrl` module imports from separate modules.

### 13.2.2 Reducing the size of `Windows.def`

If are using the module `Windows`, but do not need some parts of the Win32 API collected in it, you may build a reduced version by passing the name of the file containing the list of modules you need to one of the utilities `merge` or `reexport`. One such list is in the `DEF\WIN32\BUILD\MIN.LST` file that does not include things like OLE and multimedia. Its usage reduces the size of `Windows.def` file by about 30% and considerably speeds up compilation of modules importing the module 'Windows'.

### 13.2.3 Building GUI applications

If your program is a GUI application, toggle the GUI option ON in the project file:

```
+GUI
```

### 13.2.4 Declaring callbacks

If you have to pass a procedure as a parameter to an API call (a window procedure, for example), declare it as "StdCall" (see [10.2](#)):

```
PROCEDURE ["StdCall"] MainDlgProc
( hwnd    : Windows.HWND
; msg     : Windows.UINT
; wparam  : Windows.WPARAM
; lparam  : Windows.LPARAM
)         : Windows.BOOL;
```

## 13.3 Using resources

### 13.3.1 Automatic resource binding

In early XDS versions, resources had to be bound to an executable "manually", i.e. by invoking a resource compiler, each time after linking. Starting from version 2.20, it is possible to specify any file in the `!module` project file directive (see [4.5](#)) and iterate files by extensions in makefile templates (see [4.8](#)).

Thus, if your application uses resources, you may specify binary resource files as modules in your project to have them been automatically bound to the executable, provided that the used `templatexc:template` has adequate support:

```
!module myapp.res
```

### 13.3.2 Header files

XDS package contains a resource compiler (XRC). Its current version is compatible with traditional resource compilers found in C compiler packages. Those compiles, however, have no idea about what Modula-2 is and work only with C

header files. So does XRC. Therefore, constants which identify resources have to be defined in both C headers and Modula-2 definition modules, which may easily go out of sync.

To solve this problem, we suggest you to define resource identifiers in header files and then use the H2D utility to convert these files to definition modules before compilation.

## 13.4 Generic GUI application

The `SAMPLES\GENERIC` subdirectory of your XDS installation contains a generic GUI application, which you can use as a base for your own applications. The sample program uses the standard menus and dialogs that most applications would use. The source is designed to serve as a base for any GUI application and was written in such a way that it can be easily modified to handle any application specific commands.

# **Appendix A**

## **Limitations and restrictions**

There are some limitations and restrictions in implementation of both Modula-2 and Oberon-2 compilers.

### **Length of identifiers**

The length of an identifier is at most 127 characters.

There may be further limitations imposed by your C compiler and linker. Please check the appropriate reference manuals.

### **Length of literal strings**

The length of a literal string is at most 256 characters. Longer strings may be constructed using the string concatenation operator (See [7.2.4](#)).

### **Record extension hierarchy**

The depth of a record extension hierarchy is at most 15 extensions.

## Unimplemented ISO libraries

The following Modula-2 ISO standard library modules are not available in the current release:

<b>TermFile</b>	Access to an interactive terminal
<b>LowLong</b>	Access to underlying properties of the type LONGREAL
<b>LowReal</b>	Access to underlying properties of the type REAL

## Unimplemented Oakwood libraries

The following Oberon-2 Oakwood library modules are not available in the current release:

<b>Input</b>	Keyboard and pointer device access
<b>Files</b>	File input/output, riders
<b>XYPlane</b>	Elementary pixel plotting

## Whole overflow

The whole overflow exception is not detected in the current release.

## Coroutines

The current release provides a restricted implementation of the system module **COROUTINES**: the interrupt requests are not detected.

## Dynamic loader

The Oberon-2 dynamic loading facility is not provided in the current release.

## Appendix B

# TopSpeed Compatibility Pack

The TopSpeed Modula-2 compiler for DOS and OS/2 by Jensen and Partners International had been rather popular in late 1980s. There are millions of lines of TS Modula-2 code still used in various environments. Unfortunately, since that time the world has moved to Windows and Linux, and TopSpeed users could only watch this process as their compiler is no longer available as a standalone product, and is not actively developed, marketed, and supported by its new owners. So there is a need for them to simultaneously change the compiler and the target operating system.

XDS Modula-2 compilers, available for Windows and Linux, are likely to be considered as a replacement for TopSpeed. But moving from TopSpeed to XDS can be difficult: the JPI implementation of the language is based on PIM, whereas XDS follows the ISO 10514 standard, which is not a superset of PIM. In addition, both compilers provide different sets of language extensions.

That's why the TopSpeed Compatibility Pack (TSCP) has been developed by Excelsior. The XDS compiler which is part of TSCP has one additional option — **TOPSPEED**. Setting it ON enables a set of language extensions that makes the compiler more compatible with TopSpeed. These extensions are described in the following sections.

TSCP also contains a set of TopSpeed-like library modules (see [B.12](#)).

### B.1 Conditional compilation

The existing users of your DOS and/or OS/2 software products are not likely to move to Win32 at once as you do it. So it is desirable to be able to compile

the same sources with both TopSpeed and XDS. To facilitate this, XDS supports TopSpeed conditional compilation syntax.

**Note:** In TopSpeed, an identifier used in a conditional compilation clause must be a boolean constant, either predefined, defined in the project file, or in the source text. In XDS, it has to be an option name.

The `__XDS__` option is always set to `TRUE` in XDS Modula-2, so we recommend you to define the `__XDS__` constant in your TopSpeed project file:

```
#pragma define(__XDS__=>off)
```

and then use the above scheme to isolate TS- and XDS-specific portions of code. See example in section [B.11.1](#).

## B.2 Declarations and visibility

### B.2.1 Alias declaration

TopSpeed alias declaration (`CONST id1 ::= id2;`) is available in XDS if the option **TOPSPEED** is turned ON.

## B.3 Types

### B.3.1 Numeric types

Types `LONGCARD`, `LONGINT`, `SHORTCARD`, and `SHORTINT` are not part of ISO Modula-2, but they are available in XDS Modula-2 if the **M2ADDTYPES** compiler option is switched on. Usage of types `SYSTEM.INT8`, `SYSTEM.INT16`, etc. may also be considered.

TopSpeed Modula-2 types `TEMPREAL` and `FIXREAL` have no analogs in XDS.

### B.3.2 Sizes of base types

XDS compilers generate 32-bit code, so the base Modula-2 types, such as `CARDINAL`, `INTEGER`, and `BITSET`, are 32-bit by default, whereas in TopSpeed Modula-2 these types are 16-bit. To achieve better performance, it is recommended to use 32-bit types anywhere except in declarations that represent exter-



nally defined data structures, such as network packet layouts or database records. Unfortunately, this requires a lot of analysis that can only be done manually and requires deep understanding of the program being migrated, and therefore is error prone. This problem resembles the famous Year 2000 problem — no one can tell where in a million of source lines your program relies on base types being exactly 16 bits wide.

You may consider usage of the following techniques that do not require this analysis:

- Turn the **M2BASE16** option ON in your project files. This would force base types to be 16-bit. Types `SHORTINT`, `INTEGER`, and `LONGINT`, as well as `SHORTCARD`, `CARDINAL`, and `LONGCARD`, are assignment and parameter compatible. The compiler inserts the required conversions and checks automatically. You may need to modify your code if there are any calls of library procedures that accept or return `BITSET`s.

Take into account that the XDS runtime library has been compiled with the **M2BASE16** option turned OFF.

- Redefine these types in all your modules using fixed size types from the module `SYSTEM`:

```
( *%T __XDS__ *)
  TYPE
    INTEGER  = SYSTEM.INT16;
    CARDINAL = SYSTEM.CARD16;
    BITSET   = SYSTEM.SET16;
( *%E  *)
```

### B.3.3 Based and virtual pointers

There are no based and virtual pointers in XDS.

### B.3.4 Compatibility with system types

In TopSpeed Modula-2, types `BYTE`, `WORD`, and `LONGWORD` are assignment compatible with any type of corresponding size (1, 2, or 4 bytes), and allow testing for equality or inequality. Due to a far more complex definition of the `BYTE` and `WORD` types in ISO Modula-2, the only operation directly defined for them is an assignment and there are special rules affecting parameter compatibility (see XDS

User Guide, System parameter compatibility for further details). The LONGWORD type does not exist in XDS.

## B.4 Objects and values

### B.4.1 Fixed variable placement

In TopSpeed, a variable can be placed at a fixed physical address which is specified in segment:offset form:

```
VAR Screen [0B800H:0] : ARRAY [1..25][1..80] OF Cell;
```

In XDS, the SYSTEM.MAKEADR function has to be used:

```
VAR MyCardIO [SYSTEM.MAKEADR(0FFFF0000H)] : BITSET;
```

### B.4.2 Value constructors

In ISO Modula-2, constructors of array type and record type value use curly braces ({ }) rather than parenthesis (( )).

```
TYPE
  Struct = RECORD
    date : CARDINAL;
    time : CARDINAL;
  END;

CONST
  (* s = Struct ( 10, 12 );    TS manner *)

  s = Struct { 10, 12 };    -- XDS (ISO) manner
```

## B.5 Expressions

### B.5.1 Function calls in designators

If the option **TOPSPEED** or the option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set ON, XDS recognizes function procedure calls in designators, including predefined, SYSTEM,

and type transfer procedures:

```
CurPos(point[i,j])^.x  
GetCurDate().year  
REC_PTR(adr)^.field
```

### B.5.2 Logical shift operators

The '<<' and '>>' infix operators of logical left/right shift, defined for cardinal types in TS, are available in XDS if the option **TOPSPEED** or the option **M2EXTENSIONS** is set ON.

### B.5.3 Comparison of structured values

TopSpeed Modula-2 supports comparison of structured values (arrays and records) as a language extension. In general, alignment and packing rules of the target environment may cause existence of gaps between elements of an array or fields of a record. So comparison of structured values in raw mode (e.g. using `Lib.Compare`) is likely to produce incorrect results. In ISO Modula-2, you have to compare structured values element by element or field by field,

## B.6 Statements

### B.6.1 CASE without ELSE

In TopSpeed Modula-2, absence of the `ELSE` clause in a `CASE` statement is equivalent to presense of an empty `ELSE` clause. In XDS Modula-2, according to ISO 10514, if the value of the case selector is not contained in any case label list and the `ELSE` clause is not present, an exception shall be raised. Therefore, the `CASE` statement in the following code fragment:

```
x := 2;  
CASE x OF  
| 0: p0;  
| 1: p1;  
END;
```

does nothing if compiled by TopSpeed, and raises an exception if compiled by XDS.

The recommended solution is to add empty ELSE clauses to all your CASE statements that lack it, as this would make no difference in TopSpeed. To quickly find all such statements, turn on warning 319:

```
C:\WORK>xc t.mod -woff319- '

XDS Modula-2 v2.40 [x86, v1.08] - build 20.10.1998
Compiling "t.mod"

* [t.mod 12.05 W319]
* CASE statement without ELSE
```

## B.6.2 FOR loop control variable

ISO Modula-2 requires that a FOR loop control variable must be declared in the scope to which the loop belongs. TopSpeed does not make this restriction, so you may need to redesign some of your FOR loops.

## B.6.3 GOTO statement

There are no GOTO and LABEL clauses in ISO Modula-2. XDS provides them as an extension if the option **TOPSPEED** is turned ON.

# B.7 Procedures

## B.7.1 External procedures

XDS compilers allow only foreign procedures to be declared as external.

A declaration of an external procedure consists of a procedure header only, with the procedure name preceded by the symbol `"/"`:

```
PROCEDURE [ "C" ] / putchar(ch: SYSTEM.CARD8): SYSTEM.INT32;
```

### B.7.2 Open array parameter compatibility

In TopSpeed Modula-2, an expression of type T can be substituted as a parameter whose formal type is ARRAY OF T. XDS supports this if one of the **M2EXTENSIONS** or **TOPSPEED** is turned ON.

### B.7.3 Procedure types

In ISO Modula-2, a procedure belongs to a particular procedure type if the types of each formal parameter, taken in turn, are exactly the same. In TopSpeed Modula-2, there is one exception: if one of the two types is SYSTEM.ADDRESS, another type can be any pointer type, so the following piece of code is legal:

```

TYPE
  SetNameMethod = PROCEDURE (SYSTEM.ADDRESS, ARRAY OF CHAR);

  NodePtr = POINTER TO Node;
  Node = RECORD
      name      : ARRAY [0..63] OF CHAR;
      setname: SetNameMethod;
  END;

PROCEDURE SetNodeName(p: NodePtr; name: ARRAY OF CHAR);
BEGIN
  Str.Copy(p^.name, name);
END SetNodeName;

. . .

NEW(node);
node^.setname := SetNodeName;

```

In TopSpeed Modula-2, a procedure type definition may reference an incomplete type containing that definition, provided that the incomplete type has already been referenced:

```

TYPE
  P = POINTER TO R;
  R = RECORD

```

```

        data: CARDINAL;
        proc: PROCEDURE(R);
    END;

```

XDS does not allow this, so you have to define the procedure type separately:

```

TYPE
    P = POINTER TO R;
    R_proc_type = PROCEDURE(R);
    R = RECORD
        data: CARDINAL;
        proc: R_proc_type;
    END;

```

The NULLPROC value is absent in XDS; NIL should be used instead. You may consider declaring NULLPROC under conditional compilation in modules that use it:

```

( *%T __XDS__ *)
    CONST
        NULLPROC = NIL;
( *%E *)

```

### B.7.4 Predefined procedures

Predefined procedures FarADR, NearADR, OfS, and Seg are specific to the 80x86 16-bit real and protected modes and therefore are not available in XDS.

The FieldOfS and VSIZE procedures are predefined if the option **TOPSPEED** is set ON and are available from the module SYSTEM otherwise.

### B.7.5 Type conversion vs type cast

In TopSpeed Modula-2, the predefined function procedure VAL(*type*, *expr*) performs *type conversion* if both *type* and *expr* are numeric or ordinal, and performs *type cast* otherwise. In ISO Modula-2, VAL may only be used in the former case; SYSTEM.CAST has to be used for type casting.

According to PIM, a *type transfer function* type(*expr*) shall not affect the bit pattern representation of the result of *expr*. Unfortunately, TopSpeed does not

follow this specification and treats `type ( expr )` exactly as `VAL ( type , expr )` (see above). Due to introduction of such ambiguities by pre-ISO compiler vendors, this feature was not included in the International Standard. XDS provided it as a language extension (option **M2EXTENSIONS ON**), but treated it as `SYSTEM.CAST ( type , expr )`. Now, if the **TOPSPEED** option is turned ON, XDS will treat this construction exactly as TopSpeed. This ambiguity may lead to porting problems that are hard to detect, so the compiler issues a warning upon encountering a type transfer function. It is recommended to use the built-in `VAL` and `SYSTEM.CAST` function procedures for type conversion and type cast respectively.

### B.7.6 Inline and code procedures

In XDS, there is no way to point out an inline procedure explicitly (yet), however native-code compilers can make inline substitutions of some procedures automatically. It is also not possible to define inline procedures in a definition module. You have to move such procedures into implementation modules.

As for TopSpeed binary inline procedures, they also have no equivalent in XDS. Since they contain 16-bit mode instructions, they would have to be rewritten anyway. XDS inline assembler may be used to implement machine code routines.

## B.8 Modules

### B.8.1 Import

In TopSpeed, any entity imported into a definition module is "automatically" imported into the corresponding implementation module. In ISO Modula-2, all entities required by an implementation module should be explicitly imported into it.

TopSpeed Modula-2 supports qualification of entities defined in a definition module in the respective implementation module. In XDS, this is not possible.

### B.8.2 Hidden pointer base types

In TopSpeed, if `T` is a type defined in an implementation module, it is still possible to declare a type `POINTER TO T` in a definition module:

```
DEFINITION MODULE T;  
  
TYPE  
    p1 = POINTER TO t1;  
    r1 = RECORD  
        p2: POINTER TO t2;  
    END;  
  
END T.
```

XDS does not allow this, so you have to either

- define such types as opaque
- move base types into definition modules

### B.8.3 Export from local module

In TS, the keyword `QUALIFIED` (in local modules) has no effect and a name of an object exported from a local module can be used with or without qualification. In ISO Modula-2, there is a distinction between qualified and unqualified export. You will have to introduce uniformity here: if you mostly use objects exported from local modules with qualification, ensure presence of the `QUALIFIED` keyword, otherwise remove it. Compilation errors will then indicate places where you have to add or remove qualification.

### B.8.4 The module `SYSTEM`

In ISO Modula-2, all objects from the module `SYSTEM`, such as types `ADDRESS`, `WORD`, `BYTE`, and the procedure `ADR` have to be explicitly imported. In TopSpeed Modula-2, they are predefined.

Although the XDS module `SYSTEM` contains procedures `NEWPROCESS`, `TRANSFER`, and `IOTRANSFER`, it is recommended to replace them with more powerful mechanisms provided by the ISO system module `COROUTINES`. See also [B.12.9](#).

The set of platform-specific facilities is almost completely different in TopSpeed and XDS variants of the module `SYSTEM`.



## B.9 Intel x86 16-bit mode specifics

TopSpeed Modula-2 supports Intel x86 16-bit real and protected modes, whereas XDS produces code for the 32-bit flat memory model. Therefore, code that deals with segment:offset addresses has to be rewritten for XDS.

In XDS, there is no analog for TopSpeed pointer constructors of the form `[seg:ofs type]`. These constructors are commonly used to directly interface to hardware and to access DOS and BIOS data areas, so routines that utilize this feature have to be redesigned anyway,

The following TopSpeed Modula-2 types and procedures, specific to Intel x86 16-bit real and protected modes, are absent in XDS:

```
FarADDRESS    FarNIL    FarADR
NearADDRESS   NearNIL   NearADR
Ofs Seg
```

There are so called based pointers in TopSpeed, i.e. pointers belonging to a particular segment. This feature is useless in 32-bit flat mode, so it is not available in XDS.

## B.10 Object oriented extensions

There are no object-oriented extensions in XDS Modula-2. Although XDS features Oberon-2 as well, its OO facilities are dissimilar in many aspects from provided in TopSpeed Modula-2. So, unfortunately, the required porting efforts for a program that makes heavy use of TS OO extensions may be unaffordable.

## B.11 Pragmas

### B.11.1 Pragma syntax

XDS pragma syntax is completely different from TS. Most TopSpeed pragmas have no analogs in XDS, and many of them are pretty useless in the 32-bit flat memory model. Conditional compilation (see [B.1](#)) has to be used to isolate TopSpeed and XDS pragmas:

```
( *%T __XDS__ *)
```

```

    <* PUSH *> <* COVERFLOW - *>
    (%E *)
    (%F __XDS__ *)
    (*# save, check(overflow=>off) *)
    (%E *)
    hash := hash*alpha+ORD(ch);
    (%T __XDS__ *)
    <* POP *>
    (%E *)
    (%F __XDS__ *)
    (*# restore *)
    (%E *)

```

### B.11.2 Open array parameters passing

When an array is passed as a value parameter in TS, it can be either copied onto the stack or passed by reference, depending on the `call(o_a_copy)` pragma setting. In XDS, an array is always copied onto the stack unless the formal parameter is marked as read-only, for instance:

```

PROCEDURE PrintStr (s : ARRAY OF CHAR); -- pass by value
PROCEDURE PrintStr (s- : ARRAY OF CHAR); -- pass by reference

```

Note: the **M2EXTENSIONS** option should be turned on.

When a procedure parameter has type `ARRAY OF CHAR`, TopSpeed allows an actual parameter of type `CHAR` to be passed. This is not allowed by the ISO standard, and XDS will not accept it.

### B.11.3 Bitwise operations on cardinals

In TopSpeed Modula-2, the pragma `option(bit_expr=>on)` enables bitwise operations AND, OR, and NOT to be applied to cardinals. In XDS, this feature is enabled if the **M2EXTENSIONS** option is set ON.

### B.11.4 Other pragmas

More information on TS-to-XDS pragmae mapping will be provided in future releases.

## B.12 XDS TS-like library

Table B.1 shows which TopSpeed-like library modules are implemented in which edition of TSCP.

In order to preserve the overall level of the XDS libraries portability, a number of modifications was made to the original interface and functionality of the modules. Also, some restrictions were induced by differences between target operating systems. There are also some useful extensions. See the following sections for details.

**Note:** The library is compiled with the **M2BASE16** compiler option turned OFF, so types INTEGER, CARDINAL, and BITSET are 32-bit.

Module name	XDS-x86 (Windows)	XDS-x86 (Linux)	XDS-C (all platforms)
BiosIO	✓	✓	✓
FIO	✓	✓-	✓-
FIOF	✓	✓	✓
Graph	✓	-	-
IO	✓	✓	✓
Lib	✓	✓	✓
MATHLIB	✓	✓	✓
MsMouse	✓	✓	-
ShtHeap	✓	✓	✓
Str	✓	✓	✓
Window	✓	✓	-

Table B.1: Module/product availability matrix

### B.12.1 Module FIO

#### MODIFICATIONS

1. Since the module **FIO** is implemented on top of the ISO standard library, the procedural variable `RunTimeError` has been removed. If `IOCheck` is set to `TRUE`, an I/O error raises an exception, so ISO Module-2 exception handling facilities can be used. Exceptions raised in **FIO** can be identified in an exception handler by means of the procedures `FIO.IsFIOException()` or `IOChan.IsChanException()`.

2. The constant `MaxOpenFiles` is no longer needed, since the maximum number of open files is limited only by the system resources. If there are too many open files, either an exception will be raised or the error `tooManyOpen` will be returned by the procedure `FIO.IOresult()` (it depends on the state of the variable `IOcheck`).
3. File share modes are defined as an enumeration type:

```

TYPE
    SHAREMODE = (ShareCompat,
                  ShareDenyRW,
                  ShareDenyRD,
                  ShareDenyWR,
                  ShareDenyNone);

```

Supported target operating systems do not distinguish between subsequent opens of a file done by the same or different process, so `ShareCompat` works as `ShareDenyWR` in `OpenRead` and as `ShareDenyRW` in other file open procedures.

4. Standard file handles (e.g. `StandardInput`) are predefined variables of the `File` type rather than constants.
5. Type of the buffer parameter for `RdBin` and `WrBin` has been changed to `ARRAY OF SYSTEM.LOC` which works perfectly the same as `ARRAY OF BYTE`.
6. When a file opening error occurs, the procedures `Open`, `OpenRead`, `Create`, etc. return a special invalid value instead of `MAX(CARDINAL)`. The procedure `InvalidFile` always returns that value.
7. A disk label can be obtained by calling `FIO.GetLabel` rather than `FIO.ScanFirst` with the volume attribute set.
8. After directory scanning (`FIO.ReadFirstEntry`, `FIO.ReadNextEntry`) process is completed, a call to the `FIO.ReadClose` procedure *has to be issued* with the scan-buffer passed as a parameter.
9. The procedure `FIO.SetDrive` does not return the total number of drives available on the system.
10. The EOF flag is not set when the current read position *reaches* end of file, but on attempt to read *past it*, as in ISO routines.

11. The `Ctrl-Z` character is *not* recognized as an end-of-file mark.
12. For all procedures accepting or returning a drive number, drive numeration starts from 1 (1 is drive A, 2 is drive B and so on).
13. The **SysErr** module contains constants defining symbolic names of error codes. Those constants may be used to test a return code obtained from `FIO.IOResult`. The constant `SysErr.allRight` corresponds to a normal procedure termination (it is recommended to use this constant instead of zero value).
14. 32-bit file length is supported.
15. A file handle obtained from a system call can **NOT** be directly passed to **FIO** procedures. It has to be converted to a value of the type `File` using the `AppendHandle` procedure:

```
PROCEDURE AppendHandle(fh : LONGCARD
                      ;ReadOnly : BOOLEAN
                      ) : File;
```

16. The type `FIO.FileStamp` is declared as equal to `SysClock.DateTime`.
17. The parameter of `FIO.Close` now is a VAR parameter and the procedure shall assign an "invalid" value to it if the close operation succeeds,

## RESTRICTIONS

1. There is no multithread program support yet. Namely, the `IOResult`, `ThreadEOF` and `ThreadOK` procedures are not implemented yet, Nevertheless, the module can be used in multithread programs with the reservations listed above.
2. File share modes are only supported by Native XDS-x86 for Windows.
3. Assigning a buffer to a file is not implemented yet. I/O operations are buffered internally, but there is no way to flush an internal buffer (yet).
4. The procedures `GetStreamPointer` and `AppendStream` have been excluded,
5. The predefined variable `PrinterDevice` is not eliminated yet.

6. `RdReal` and `RdLngReal` do not recognize exponent-only zeroes, such as `E+0`.

## PRODUCTS

Native XDS-x86 for Windows

Native XDS-x86 for Linux (with limitations)

XDS-C (with limitations)

### B.12.2 Module Graph

#### MODIFICATIONS

1. The major difference between TS original and XDS implementations of the module **Graph** is a windowed mode: a program, which uses the module, opens the **Graph** window by a call to the `Graph.Init` procedure, invokes the procedures provided by the module to draw in the window and set some parameters (e.g. a clipping region) and calls to the `Graph.Exit` procedure to close the **Graph** window. It is possible to open only one **Graph** window at a time.

The `Init` procedure has been changed to

```
PROCEDURE Init(xLeft, yTop, xd, yd : LONGCARD) : BOOLEAN;
```

The position of the left upper corner of the **Graph** window is passed in the `xLeft` and `yTop` parameters, horizontal and vertical sizes of the window are passed in the `xd` and `yd` parameters. The **Graph** window is closed automatically upon program termination. The `Exit` procedure can be used to close the **Graph** window before the program execution is finished:

```
PROCEDURE Exit;
```

The `Init` procedure returns success indicator (`TRUE` means successful module initialization) and it is recommended to test the value in the program.

2. The procedures `GraphMode` and `TextMode` switch focus between the console window and the **Graph** window and appropriately change their z-order.
3. The procedure `SetGraphWindowTitle`, which sets the title of the **Graph** window, has been added:

```
PROCEDURE SetGraphWindowTitle (text :ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

4. The procedure `GetVideoConfig` has been removed. The fields of the `VideoConfig` record, which were typically used, are exported as variables:

Name	Explanation	VideoConfig field
Width	width of the Graph window work area	numxpixels
Depth	depth of the Graph window work area	numypixels
NumPColors	number of colors in use	numcolors
Columns	number of text columns available	numtextcols
Rows	number of text rows available	numtextrows

**Note:** By "number of text columns" ("text rows") a maximum number of monospaced font characters which can be placed into the **Graph** window in one column (row) is meant.

5. The `Fill` parameter has been added to the procedure `Polygon`:

```
PROCEDURE Polygon(n : CARDINAL;
                  px, py : ARRAY OF CARDINAL;
                  FillColor : CARDINAL;
                  Fill : BOOLEAN);
```

The variable `FillState`, influencing on `Polygon`'s fill mode, has been excluded.

6. The procedure `Pie_a` has been added:

```
PROCEDURE Pie_a (x1, y1, x2, y2 : LONGCARD;
                 startAngle, sweepAngle : LONGREAL;
                 Color :CARDINAL; Fill : BOOLEAN);
```

A pie is defined as a part of an ellipse enclosed in the rectangle ( `x1`, `y1`, `x2`, `y2` ), with a start angle passed in the `startAngle` parameter and a sweep angle passed in the `sweepAngle`. Angles are measured in degrees. The pie is drawn counterclockwise.

7. It is recommended to invoke the `CancelClipRgn` procedure to disable clipping instead of a call to `SetClipRgn` with a whole window position and sizes passed as parameters.
8. The procedure `RawOutText` draws a text at the position (`x`,`y`) defined in pels rather than in text columns and rows:

```
PROCEDURE RawOutText (x, y : LONGCARD;
                     Color : LONGCARD;
                     Text : ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

9. Since Win32 GDI engine keep a bitmap in a system heap, there is no need to allocate memory for a bitmap in a program which uses the module, so the procedure `ImageSize` always returns 0.

The following scheme shows the standard order of procedure calls within the program which uses bitmaps:

- (a) Invoke the `GetImage` procedure to create a bitmap:

```
PROCEDURE GetImage(x1, y1, x2, y2 : LONGCARD;
                  VAR bmpHandle : HBITMAP );
```

The handle of the created bitmap will be returned in the `bmpHandle` parameter (the `HBITMAP` type is exported from the module).

- (b) To draw the previously created bitmap, call the `PutImage` procedure, passing the bitmap handle in the `bmpHandle` parameter:

```
PROCEDURE PutImage(x, y : LONGCARD;
                  bmpHandle : HBITMAP;
                  Action : LONGCARD);
```

- (c) When a bitmap is no longer needed, it is recommended to delete it in order to release system resources by calling the `DelImage` procedure:

```
PROCEDURE DelImage(hbmHandle : HBITMAP);
```

10. Because of an OS/2 GPI restriction, there is no way to set an arbitrary line style (e.g. to draw outline circle), nevertheless there is a number of the predefined line styles which can be set by means of a call to the `SetLineStyle` procedure. Any of the following constants, exported from the module, can be passed to the `SetLineStyle` procedure:

```
LNSTYLE_DOT
LNSTYLE_SHORTDASH
LNSTYLE_DASHDOT
LNSTYLE_DOUBLEDOT
LNSTYLE_DASHDOUBLEDOT
LNSTYLE_SOLID
```



11. A program can define its own fill mask (the `SetFillMask` procedure). Also the **Graph** module provides the `SetStdFillMask` procedure to use several standard fill masks. The following constants, exported from the module, define different fill masks :

```
PATSYM_DENSE1
PATSYM_DENSE2
PATSYM_DENSE3
...
```

12. The `SetBkMix` procedure has been added to the original functionality.

`PROCEDURE SetBkMix (isOpaque : BOOLEAN);`

The `_TRANSPARENT` and `_OPAQUE` constants can be passed to the `isOpaque` parameter. The procedure sets background color mixture mode. Namely, if `_OPAQUE` passed, bits of a fill mask, set in zero, are painted in background color when filling with a non-solid mask is used. If `_TRANSPARENT` passed, screen pixels corresponding to zero bits of a fill mask, are not changed.

13. The `RemapPalette` and `RemapAllPalette` procedures are provided to set a logical palette. The `InitStdPalette` procedure allows to set the palette to the initial state, in which only 16 colors, corresponding to the colors constants (e.g. `_clrLIGHTBLUE` ), are defined.
14. The procedures `TrueCircle` and `TrueDisc` are defined as equal to `Circle` and `Disc` respectively, as pixels are square in all commonly used video modes provided by modern display adapters.

## RESTRICTIONS

1. Device specific constants and routines, such as `CGAWidth`, `InitCGA`, etc., have been removed
2. The following procedures have been excluded: `SelectPalette` (CGA only), `SetVideoMode`, `SetActivePage`, `SetVisualPage`,
3. It is possible to set a custom palette by means of a call to the `RemapPalette` or `RemapAllPalette` procedures. However, the palette colors map to the nearest colors of the current physical palette on your device.

**PRODUCTS**

Native XDS-x86 for Windows

Native XDS-x86 for Linux (with limitations)

**B.12.3 Module IO****RESTRICTIONS**

1. The `IO.KeyPressed()` and `IO.RdKey()` procedures, providing direct read from keyboard, are available in console applications only.
2. `RdReal` and `RdLngReal` do not recognize exponent-only zeroes, such as `E+0`.

**PRODUCTS**

All XDS products

**B.12.4 Module Lib****MODIFICATIONS**

1. Although address operations (`SubAddr`, `AddAddr` etc.) and other low-level procedures (such as `Fill`, `Move`) are available, usage of their analogs from the module `SYSTEM` (`ADDADR`, `SUBADR`, `FILL`, etc.) would improve performance. Please consult the User's Guide, Chapter "XDS Modula-2" for more information.
2. The procedural variable `RunTimeError` has been removed. In ISO Modula-2, exceptions should be used for error handling purposes. The `MathError` procedure has been excluded because of the same reason. See also the description of changes made to the **FIO** module.
3. The `Terminate` procedure has been removed because the same effect can be obtained by means of ISO Modula-2 standard mechanisms, such as module finalization and the system module **TERMINATION** (see XDS User Guide, new language's features)
4. `SetDate` and `SetTime` are now pure procedures.

5. The Environment procedure definition has been changed to

```
PROCEDURE Environment (N :CARDINAL;
                      VAR result :ARRAY OF CHAR);
```

6. The WordFill procedure definition has been changed to

```
PROCEDURE WordFill(Dest: ADDRESS;
                  WordCount: CARDINAL;
                  Value: SYSTEM.CARD16);
```

## RESTRICTIONS

1. The following platform-specific procedures have been removed:

AddressOK	CpuId
GetInProgramFlag	Execute
NoSound	ProtectedMode
SelectorLimit	SetReturnCode
SetInProgramFlag	Sound
SysErrNo	UserBreak
WrDosError	

2. The EnableBreakCheck and DisableBreakCheck procedures are not implemented; the CtrlC module from the XDS run-time library should be used to handle Ctrl-C and Ctrl-Break events.

## PRODUCTS

All XDS products

### B.12.5 Module MATHLIB

## RESTRICTIONS

1. The following procedures are not implemented: LongToBcd, BcdToLong
2. ISO Modula-2 exception handling (see [7.2](#)) is used to report floating point errors, therefore the procedure variable MathError is not provided.

## PRODUCTS

All XDS products

## B.12.6 Module ShtHeap

### MODIFICATIONS

1. If a memory allocation failure occurs, NIL is returned.
2. The type `ShtHeap.Pointer` was replaced with the type `SYSTEM.ADDRESS`.
3. The `ShtHeap.Increase` procedure has been eliminated.
4. Heap size is not restricted by 64 Kbytes (so `ShtHeap` is a historical name).

### PRODUCTS

All XDS products

## B.12.7 Module Str

### MODIFICATIONS

1. The `LowS` procedure (conversion to lower case) has been added to the module.
2. In `TopSpeed`, the procedure `FixRealToStr` does not output more than 17 digits, whereas in XDS there is always `Precision` digits after decimal point.

As a result, after a call `FixRealToStr(V, 5, S, Ok)` variables `S` and `Ok` have the following values in TS and XDS respectively:

V	SIZE(S)	S	OK
0.99E17	30	99000000000000000.0	TRUE
		99000000000000000.00000	TRUE
0.99E18	30	990000000000000000	TRUE
		990000000000000000.00000	TRUE
0.99E18	18	990000000000000000	TRUE
		?	FALSE

### PRODUCTS

All XDS products

## B.12.8 Module Window

### EXTENSIONS

1. An arbitrary screen size (number of rows and columns) is supported. The `ScreenWidth` ( = 80 ) and `ScreenDepth` ( = 25 ) constants are remained, but in the case of non-standard screen size, actual values can be obtained from the `CurrentScreenWidth` and `CurrentScreenDepth` variables (the `CurrentScreenWidth` variable has been added to the original TS Window functionality).
2. Input and output in any window, can be performed not only by means of the XDS TS-like module **IO**, but also through ISO standard input/output modules, such as `STextIO` or `SRawIO`.

### RESTRICTIONS

1. The `CGASnow` constant has been removed.
2. It is needed to call the `GetWDescriptor` procedure to obtain pointer to the `WinDescriptor` record, since in the XDS implementation of the **Window** module, `WinType` is an opaque type rather than pointer to record. The following declarations were added to the definition module:

```

TYPE
    p2WDescriptor = POINTER TO WinDescriptor;

    PROCEDURE GetWDescriptor ( W :WinType ) :p2WDescriptor;
```

3. The `SetProcessLocks` procedures has been removed (multithread support implemented in such a way, that there is no need to use it).

### PRODUCTS

Native XDS-x86 for Windows

Native XDS-x86 for Linux (with limitations)

### B.12.9 Multithreading

The TopSpeed module `Process` implements its own scheduler which does not make use of the underlying operating system multithreading capabilities, in order to enable the development of multithread programs portable between DOS and OS/2. In case of XDS, the ISO `Processes` module should be used. Under Windows, its functionality is mapped onto the corresponding thread control API.

**Note:** The **MULTITHREAD** option should be set on to enable the functionality described above. Otherwise, the module `Processes` will work in coroutines mode.

An example of the `Processes` module usage is the `WinDemoM` sample which was ported from TopSpeed Modula-2.

The `Processes` module does not provide direct way to start or stop the process scheduler, which is possible in TopSpeed `Process` module, but this problem can be easily solved by writing some extra code (see `WinDemoM.mod`).

The ISO standard module `Semaphores` can be used to utilize the underlying operating system semaphore API.

# Bibliography

- [MöWi91] H.Mössenböck, N.Wirth. The Programming Language Oberon-2. Structured Programming, 1991, 12, 179-195.
- [PIM] N.Wirth. Programming in Modula-2. 4th edition. Springer-Verlag, 1988. ISBN 0-387-50150-9.
- [Wirth88] N.Wirth. From Modula-2 to Oberon. Software, Practice and Experience 18:7(1988), 661-670.
- [ReWi92] M.Reiser, N.Wirth. Programming in Oberon - Steps Beyond Pascal and Modula. ACM Press, Addison Wessley, 1992. ISBN 0-201-56543-9
- [Mö93] H.Mössenböck. Object Oriented Programming in Oberon-2. Springer-Verlag, 1993. ISBN 3-540-56411-X

# Index

- NAME+, 17
- NAME-, 17
- NAME:, 17
- NAME::, 17
- NAME:=, 17
- NAME=, 17
- .bat (See BATEXT), 28
- .def (See DEF), 18
- .mkf (See MKFEXT), 27
- .mod (See MOD), 18
- .ob2 (See OBERON), 18
- .odf (See BSDEF), 27
- .prj (See PRJEXT), 26
- < \* \* >, 146
- .c (See CODE), 29
- .h (See HEADER), 29
- .sym (See SYM), 29
- xm, 11
- xm.cfg, 17
- xm.msg, 19
- xm.red, 14
- xm.exe, 23
- \_\_GEN\_C\_\_, 43, 45
- \_\_GEN\_X86\_\_, 43, 44
- ABS, 124
- ADDRESS, 130
- address arithmetic, 131
- ALIGNMENT, 56, 58, 217
- AllocateSource, 112
- ASH, 124
- ASSERT, 123, 145
- ASSERT, 42, 45
- ASSERT (Oberon-2), 151
- ATTENTION, 35, 57, 58
- BaseOf, 167
- BATEXT, 28, 56, 58
- BATNAME, 28, 57, 58
- BATWIDTH, 28, 57, 58
- browser style, 151
- BSCLOSURE, 27, 44, 45, 151
- BSDEF, 19, 27, 56, 58
- BSREDEFINE, 27, 44, 45, 151
- BSTYLE, 27, 57, 58, 151
- BYTE, 129
- C compiler, 7
- C interface, 176
  - external procedures, 177
  - language specification, 174
  - using C functions, 179
- CAP, 124
- caseSelectException, 116
- CHANGESYM, 29, 44, 45, 51, 87
- CHECKDINDEX, 42, 46, 46, 117
- CHECKDIV, 42, 46, 118
- CHECKINDEX, 42, 46, 117
- CHECKNIL, 42, 46, 117
- CHECKPROC, 42, 46
- CHECKRANGE, 42, 46, 117
- CHECKSET, 42, 47, 117, 118
- CHECKTYPE, 42, 47
- CHR, 124
- CMPLX, 124
- CODE, 19, 56, 58
- Collect, 164
- COMMENT, 43, 47, 219



- COMPILER**, 63
- COMPILERHEAP**, 12, 13, 57, 59, 224
- COMPILERTHRES**, 57, 59
- COMPLEX**, 101
- complex numbers, 101
- conditional compilation, 147
- configuration, 11
  - configuration file, 17
  - directories, 13
  - filename extensions, 18
  - redirection file, 14
  - search paths, 11
- configuration file
  - master, 18
- configuration file (xm.cfg), 17
- CONVHDRNAME**, 43, 47, 220
- COPY**, 123
- COPYRIGHT**, 56, 59, 220
- COROUTINES**, 119
- CSTDLIB**, 43, 47, 218
- CurrentNumber, 113
  
- debugging a program, 8
- DEC**, 123
- DECOR**, 6, 57, 59
- DEF**, 19, 56, 59
- definition for Oberon-2 module, 150
- DIFADR16**, 43, 47, 54
- DIFADR16**, 210
- DISPOSE**, 108, 123, 144
- DISPOSE (SYSTEM, O2)**, 158
- DLS**, 174
- DYNALLOCATE**, 144
- DYNDEALLOCATE**, 144
  
- ENTIER**, 124
- ENUMSIZE**, 56, 59
- ENV\_HOST**, 57, 59
- ENV\_TARGET**, 57, 60
- equations, 55
  
- ALIGNMENT**, 58
- ATTENTION**, 58
- BATEXT**, 58
- BATNAME**, 58
- BATWIDTH**, 58
- BSDEF**, 58
- BSTYLE**, 58
- CODE**, 58
- COMPILERHEAP**, 59
- COMPILERTHRES**, 59
- COPYRIGHT**, 59
- DECOR**, 59
- DEF**, 59
- ENUMSIZE**, 59
- ENV\_HOST**, 59
- ENV\_TARGET**, 60
- ERRFMT**, 60
- ERRLIM**, 60
- FILE**, 60
- GCTHRESHOLD**, 60
- GENIDLEN**, 60
- GENINDENT**, 60
- GENWIDTH**, 60
- HEADER**, 60
- HEAPLIMIT**, 61
- LINK**, 61
- LOOKUP**, 61
- MKFEXT**, 61
- MKFNAME**, 61
- MOD**, 61
- MODULE**, 61
- OBBERON**, 62
- OBJEXT**, 62
- PRJ**, 62
- PRJEXT**, 62
- PROJECT**, 62
- SETSIZE**, 62
- STACKLIMIT**, 62
- SYM**, 62
- TABSTOP**, 62
- TEMPLATE**, 63

- ERRFMT**, 57, 60, 63
- ERRLIM**, 57, 60
- error message format, 63
- ExceptionNumber, 112
- EXCEPTIONS**, 112
  - AllocateSource, 112
  - CurrentNumber, 113
  - ExceptionNumber, 112
  - ExceptionSource, 112
  - GetMessage, 113
  - IsCurrentSource, 113
  - IsExceptionalExecution, 113
  - RAISE, 113
- exceptions, 110
- ExceptionSource, 112
- EXCL**, 123
- FATFS**, 44, 47
- FILE**, 57, 60, 61
- file name
  - extension, 18
  - portable notation, 12
- Files**, 228
- finalization, 109
- Finalizer, 165
- fixed size types, 130
- FLOAT**, 124
- foreign definition module, 176
- garbage collection, 149, 161
- GCAUTO**, 44, 48, 162
- GCTHRESHOLD**, 56, 60
- GENCDIV**, 43, 48
- GENCONSTENUM**, 43, 48
- GENCPP**, 43, 48, 214
- GENCTYPES**, 43, 48, 210
- GENDATE**, 43, 48
- GENDEBUG**, 8, 43, 48, 211
- GENFULLNAME**, 43, 49
- GENHISTORY**, 43, 49, 163
- GENIDLEN**, 56, 60, 216
- GENINDENT**, 56, 60
- GENKRC**, 43, 48, 49, 60, 195, 213
- GENPROCLASS**, 43, 49, 194, 214
- GENPROFILE**, 43, 49, 213
- GENSIZE**, 43, 49, 95, 217
- GENTYPEDEF**, 43, 50, 214
- GENWIDTH**, 49, 50, 56, 60, 220
- GetInfo, 165
- GetMessage, 113
- HALT**, 123, 145
- HEADER**, 19, 56, 60
- HEAPLIMIT**, 12, 56, 61, 162
- HIGH**, 124
- history, 8
- IM**, 124
- implementation limitations, 227
- INC**, 123
- INCL**, 123
- INDEX16**, 43, 50, 54
- INDEX16**, 209
- inline equations, 145
- inline options, 145
- Input**, 228
- InstallFinalizer, 165
- INT**, 124
- interrupt handling, 121
- IsCurrentSource, 113
- IsExceptionalExecution, 113
- IsM2Exception, 116
- IterCommands, 169
- IterModules, 169
- IterTypes, 169
- LEN**, 124
- LENGTH**, 124
- LevelOf, 167
- LFLOAT**, 124
- limitations of implementation, 227
- LINENO**, 9, 43, 48, 49, 50, 60, 163, 219

**LINK**, 26, 36, 57, 61

**LOC**, 129

**LONGNAME**, 28, 44, 50

**LOOKUP**, 32, 57, 61

**LowLong**, 228

**LowReal**, 228

**M2**, 6, 25, 44, 51

**M2ADDTYPES**, 42, 51, 97, 130, 135, 136, 230

**M2ADR** (SYSTEM, O2), 159

**M2BASE16**, 42, 51, 130, 131, 171, 231, 241

**M2CMPSYM**, 42, 46, 51, 87

**M2EXCEPTION**

caseSelectException, 116

coException, 116

complexDivException, 117

complexValueException, 117

exException, 117

functionException, 117

indexException, 117

invalidLocation, 117

IsM2Exception, 116

M2Exception, 116

protException, 117

rangeException, 117

realDivException, 118

realValueException, 118

sysException, 118

wholeDivException, 118

wholeValueException, 118

**M2EXCEPTION**, 115

M2Exception, 116

**M2EXTENSIONS**, 42, 51, 78, 97, 122, 135, 138, 140–143, 145, 179, 232, 233, 235, 237, 240

**MAIN**, 6, 38, 44, 51, 145, 150

**MAKEDEF**, 27, 44, 51, 150

**MAKEFILE**, 35, 44, 52

mapping to C, 181

code generation options, 209

code layout, 181

data types, 187

identifiers, 184

module body, 204

nested procedures, 203

Oberon-2 features, 205

procedure declaration, 194

master configuration file, 18

master redirection file, 11

**MAX**, 124

memory management, 108, 144, 161

memory usage (compilers), 12

message

E001, 65

E002, 65

E003, 65

E004, 66

E006, 66

E007, 67

E008, 67

E012, 66

E020, 68

E021, 68

E022, 69

E023, 69

E024, 69

E025, 69

E026, 70

E027, 70

E028, 69

E029, 70

E030, 70

E031, 70

E032, 70

E033, 70

E034, 71

E035, 71

E036, 71

E037, 71

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| E038, <a href="#">71</a> | E090, <a href="#">76</a>  |
| E039, <a href="#">72</a> | E091, <a href="#">76</a>  |
| E040, <a href="#">72</a> | E092, <a href="#">76</a>  |
| E041, <a href="#">72</a> | E093, <a href="#">76</a>  |
| E043, <a href="#">72</a> | E094, <a href="#">77</a>  |
| E044, <a href="#">72</a> | E095, <a href="#">77</a>  |
| E046, <a href="#">72</a> | E096, <a href="#">77</a>  |
| E047, <a href="#">72</a> | E097, <a href="#">77</a>  |
| E048, <a href="#">73</a> | E098, <a href="#">77</a>  |
| E049, <a href="#">73</a> | E099, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E050, <a href="#">73</a> | E100, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E051, <a href="#">73</a> | E1001, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E052, <a href="#">73</a> | E1002, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E053, <a href="#">73</a> | E1003, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E054, <a href="#">73</a> | E1004, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E055, <a href="#">73</a> | E1005, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E057, <a href="#">73</a> | E1006, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E058, <a href="#">73</a> | E1007, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E059, <a href="#">74</a> | E1008, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E060, <a href="#">74</a> | E1009, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E061, <a href="#">74</a> | E1010, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E062, <a href="#">74</a> | E1011, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E064, <a href="#">74</a> | E1012, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E065, <a href="#">74</a> | E1013, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E067, <a href="#">75</a> | E1014, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E068, <a href="#">75</a> | E1015, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E069, <a href="#">75</a> | E1016, <a href="#">95</a> |
| E071, <a href="#">75</a> | E1017, <a href="#">96</a> |
| E072, <a href="#">75</a> | E1018, <a href="#">94</a> |
| E074, <a href="#">75</a> | E1019, <a href="#">96</a> |
| E075, <a href="#">75</a> | E102, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E076, <a href="#">76</a> | E107, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E078, <a href="#">76</a> | E109, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E081, <a href="#">67</a> | E110, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E082, <a href="#">67</a> | E111, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E083, <a href="#">68</a> | E112, <a href="#">78</a>  |
| E085, <a href="#">68</a> | E113, <a href="#">79</a>  |
| E086, <a href="#">68</a> | E114, <a href="#">79</a>  |
| E087, <a href="#">76</a> | E116, <a href="#">79</a>  |
| E088, <a href="#">76</a> | E118, <a href="#">79</a>  |
| E089, <a href="#">76</a> | E119, <a href="#">79</a>  |

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| E120, <a href="#">79</a> | E175, <a href="#">67</a> |
| E121, <a href="#">79</a> | E200, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E122, <a href="#">79</a> | E201, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E123, <a href="#">80</a> | E202, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E124, <a href="#">80</a> | E203, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E125, <a href="#">80</a> | E206, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E126, <a href="#">80</a> | E208, <a href="#">85</a> |
| E128, <a href="#">80</a> | E219, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E129, <a href="#">80</a> | E220, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E131, <a href="#">80</a> | E221, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E132, <a href="#">80</a> | E281, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E133, <a href="#">80</a> | E282, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E134, <a href="#">81</a> | E283, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E135, <a href="#">81</a> | F005, <a href="#">66</a> |
| E136, <a href="#">81</a> | F010, <a href="#">66</a> |
| E137, <a href="#">81</a> | F103, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E139, <a href="#">81</a> | F104, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E140, <a href="#">81</a> | F105, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E141, <a href="#">82</a> | F106, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E143, <a href="#">82</a> | F142, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E144, <a href="#">82</a> | F173, <a href="#">66</a> |
| E145, <a href="#">82</a> | F174, <a href="#">67</a> |
| E146, <a href="#">82</a> | F190, <a href="#">86</a> |
| E147, <a href="#">82</a> | F191, <a href="#">87</a> |
| E148, <a href="#">82</a> | F192, <a href="#">87</a> |
| E149, <a href="#">83</a> | F193, <a href="#">87</a> |
| E150, <a href="#">83</a> | F194, <a href="#">87</a> |
| E151, <a href="#">83</a> | F195, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E152, <a href="#">83</a> | F196, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E153, <a href="#">83</a> | F197, <a href="#">88</a> |
| E154, <a href="#">83</a> | W300, <a href="#">89</a> |
| E155, <a href="#">83</a> | W301, <a href="#">89</a> |
| E156, <a href="#">84</a> | W302, <a href="#">89</a> |
| E158, <a href="#">84</a> | W303, <a href="#">89</a> |
| E159, <a href="#">84</a> | W304, <a href="#">89</a> |
| E160, <a href="#">84</a> | W305, <a href="#">90</a> |
| E161, <a href="#">84</a> | W310, <a href="#">90</a> |
| E162, <a href="#">84</a> | W311, <a href="#">90</a> |
| E163, <a href="#">84</a> | W312, <a href="#">90</a> |
| E171, <a href="#">66</a> | W314, <a href="#">90</a> |
| E172, <a href="#">66</a> | W315, <a href="#">91</a> |

- W316, [91](#)
- W317, [91](#)
- W318, [92](#)
- W320, [92](#)
- W321, [92](#)
- W322, [92](#)
- W323, [92](#)
- W390, [92](#)
- W900, [92](#)
- W901, [93](#)
- W902, [93](#)
- W903, [93](#)
- W910, [93](#)
- W911, [93](#)
- W912, [93](#)
- W913, [93](#)
- W914, [93](#)
- W915, [93](#)
- MIN, [124](#)
- MKFEXT, [27](#), [56](#), [61](#)
- MKFNAME, [27](#), [57](#), [61](#)
- MOD, [19](#), [56](#), [61](#)
- Modula-2, [97](#)
  - array constructors, [140](#)
  - complex types, [101](#)
  - COROUTINES, [119](#)
  - dynamic arrays, [138](#)
  - EXCEPTIONS, [112](#)
  - exceptions, [110](#)
  - lexical extensions, [135](#)
  - M2EXCEPTION, [115](#)
  - NEW and DISPOSE, [108](#), [144](#)
  - numeric types, [136](#)
  - open arrays, [105](#)
  - PACKEDSET, [102](#)
  - read-only export, [143](#)
  - read-only parameters, [141](#)
  - renaming in import clause, [143](#)
  - SEQ parameters, [142](#)
  - set complement, [140](#)
  - standard procedures, [122](#)
  - string concatenation, [103](#)
  - SYSTEM, [127](#)
  - system functions, [131](#)
  - system procedures, [134](#)
  - TERMINATION, [119](#)
  - value constructors, [103](#)
- MODULE, [57](#), [60](#), [61](#)
- ModuleOf, [167](#)
- multilanguage programming, [171](#)
  - external procedures, [177](#)
  - interface to C, [176](#)
  - language specification, [174](#)
  - Modula-2/Oberon-2, [171](#)
- NameIterator, [168](#)
- NameOfModule, [166](#)
- NameOfType, [168](#)
- NEW (M2), [108](#), [144](#)
- NEW (SYSTEM, O2), [158](#)
- NewObj, [168](#)
- NOEXTERN, [43](#), [52](#), [218](#)
- NOHEADER, [29](#), [34](#), [35](#), [43](#), [52](#), [217](#)
- NOOPTIMIZE, [43](#), [52](#), [210](#)
- O2, [6](#), [25](#), [44](#), [52](#)
- O2ADDKWD, [42](#), [52](#)
- O2EXTENSIONS, [42](#), [52](#), [78](#), [149](#), [155–157](#)
- O2ISOPRAGMA, [42](#), [53](#), [152](#)
- O2NUMEXT, [42](#), [53](#), [149](#), [152](#), [154](#)
- Oakwood Extensions, [152](#)
- OBBERON, [19](#), [24](#), [56](#), [62](#)
- Oberon environment, [149](#)
- Oberon run-time support, [149](#), [164](#)
- Oberon-2, [149](#)
  - ASSERT, [151](#)
  - comments, [156](#)
  - complex numbers, [152](#)
  - definition, [150](#)
  - identifiers, [151](#)

- in-line exponentiation, 154
- language extensions, 155
- module SYSTEM, 157
- numeric extensions, 152
- read-only parameters, 156
- SEQ parameters, 157
- string concatenation, 156
- SYSTEM.BYTE, 158
- using Modula-2, 154
- VAL, 156
- value constructors, 157
- oberonRTS**, 164
- OBJEXT**, 56, 62
- ODD, 124
- operation modes, 24
  - ALL, 27
  - BATCH, 28
  - BROWSE, 27
  - COMPILE, 24
  - EQUATIONS, 29
  - GEN, 26
  - MAKE, 25
  - OPTIONS, 28
  - PROJECT, 26
- option precedence, 23
- options, 41
  - \_\_GEN\_C\_\_**, 45
  - \_\_GEN\_X86\_\_**, 44
  - ASSERT**, 45
  - BSCLOSURE**, 45
  - BSREDEFINE**, 45
  - CHANGESYM**, 45
  - CHECKDINDEX**, 46
  - CHECKDIV**, 46
  - CHECKINDEX**, 46
  - CHECKNIL**, 46
  - CHECKPROC**, 46
  - CHECKRANGE**, 46
  - CHECKSET**, 47
  - CHECKTYPE**, 47
  - code control, 43
  - code control equations, 56
  - COMMENT**, 47
  - CONVHDRNAME**, 47
  - CSTDLIB**, 47
  - DIFADR16**, 47
  - FATFS**, 47
  - file extensions, 56
  - GCAUTO**, 48
  - GENCDIV**, 48
  - GENCONSTENUM**, 48
  - GENCPP**, 48
  - GENCTYPES**, 48
  - GENDATE**, 48
  - GENDEBUG**, 48
  - GENFULLFNAME**, 49
  - GENHISTORY**, 49
  - GENKRC**, 49
  - GENPROCLASS**, 49
  - GENPROFILE**, 49
  - GENSIZE**, 49
  - GENTYPEDEF**, 50
  - INDEX16**, 50
  - language control, 42
  - LINENO**, 50
  - LONGNAME**, 50
  - M2**, 51
  - M2ADDTYPES**, 51
  - M2BASE16**, 51
  - M2CMPSYM**, 51
  - M2EXTENSIONS**, 51
  - MAIN**, 51
  - MAKEDEF**, 51
  - MAKEFILE**, 52
  - miscellaneous equations, 57
  - miscellaneous options, 44
  - NOEXTERN**, 52
  - NOHEADER**, 52
  - NOOPTIMIZE**, 52
  - O2**, 52
  - O2ADDKWD**, 52
  - O2EXTENSIONS**, 52

**O2ISOPRAGMA**, 53  
**O2NUMEXT**, 53  
**OVERWRITE**, 53  
**PROCINLINE**, 53  
 run-time checks, 42  
**STORAGE**, 53  
**TARGET16**, 54  
**TOPSPEED**, 54  
**VERBOSE**, 54  
**VERSIONKEY**, 54  
**WERR**, 54  
**WOFF**, 55  
**XCOMMENTS**, 55  
 ORD (M2), 124  
**OVERWRITE**, 15, 37, 44, 53  
 portability  
     file names, 12  
 possible problems, 221  
 postmorten history, 8  
 precedence of options, 23  
**PRJ**, 26, 32, 57, 62  
**PRJEXT**, 26, 56, 62  
**PROCINLINE**, 43, 53  
**PROJECT**, 57, 62  
 project files, 31  
 RAISE, 113  
 RE, 124  
 read-only parameters, 141, 156  
 redirection file, 14  
     master, 11  
 regular expressions, 15  
 RTS, 161  
 Run-Time support, 161  
 running a program, 7  
 Search, 166  
 SEQ parameters, 142, 157  
**SETSIZE**, 56, 62  
 SIZE, 124  
 SizeOf, 167

**STACKLIMIT**, 56, 62  
 standard procedures  
     Modula-2, 122  
**STORAGE**, 42, 53, 71, 109, 144, 162  
 string concatenation, 156  
**SYM**, 19, 56, 62  
 symbol files, 29  
 SYSTEM  
     ADDADR, 131  
     ADR (M2), 132  
     BIT, 133  
     CAST, 132  
     CC, 133  
     CODE, 134  
     DIFADR, 131  
     DISPOSE, 158  
     FILL, 134  
     GET, 134  
     GETREG, 158  
     M2ADR, 159  
     MOVE, 134  
     NEW, 158  
     PUT, 134  
     PUTREG, 158  
     REF (M2), 133  
     ROTATE, 133  
     SHIFT, 133  
     SUBADR, 131  
     TSIZE, 132  
**SYSTEM**, 127, 157  
 system modules  
     COMPILER, 63  
     COROUTINES, 119  
     EXCEPTIONS, 112  
     M2EXCEPTION, 115  
     SYSTEM (M2), 127  
     SYSTEM (O2), 157  
     TERMINATION, 119  
 system types, 129



**TABSTOP**, [57](#), [62](#)  
**TARGET16**, [43](#), [54](#), [54](#)  
**TARGET16**, [209](#)  
**TEMPLATE**, [27](#), [57](#), [63](#)  
template files, [26](#), [35](#)  
**TermFile**, [228](#)  
**TERMINATION**, [119](#)  
ThisCommand, [167](#)  
ThisType, [167](#)  
**TOPSPEED**, [42](#), [54](#), [179](#), [229](#), [230](#),  
[232–237](#)  
TRUNC, [124](#)  
TypeOf, [168](#)  
  
VAL (M2), [124](#)  
VAL (O2), [156](#)  
value constructors, [103](#), [157](#)  
**VERBOSE**, [35](#), [44](#), [54](#)  
**VERSIONKEY**, [43](#), [54](#), [216](#)  
**VOLATILE**, [84](#)  
  
**WERR**, [44](#), [54](#)  
Window, [251](#)  
**WOFF**, [44](#), [55](#)  
WORD, [129](#)  
  
X2C.h, [181](#)  
**XCOMMENTS**, [44](#), [52](#), [55](#), [150](#)  
**XYPlane**, [228](#)



This page had been intentionally left blank.



**Excelsior, LLC**

6 Lavrenteva Ave.

Novosibirsk 630090 Russia

Tel: +7 (383) 330-5508

Fax: +1 (509) 271-5205

Email: [info@excelsior-usa.com](mailto:info@excelsior-usa.com)

Web: <http://www.excelsior-usa.com>